This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com

EducT
378.22
755

Digitized by Google

Educ T 718.22.755

Box No. 842

ESSEX INSTITUTE.

CANCELLED

BEQUEATHED BY
DANIEL A. WHITE.

RECEIVED NOVEMBER, 1861.

LIBRARY CONDITIONS.

The Library to be under the control of the Directors, who may withhold such books from circulation as they may deem expedient.

Each member shall be permitted to take from the Library, one folio, or one quarto, or two of any lesser fold, with the plates belonging to the same, upon signing a receipt for the same, and promising to make good any damage which may be sustained when in their possession, or to replace the same, if lost.

No person shall lend any book belonging to the Institute, except to a member, under a penalty of one dollar for every offence.

The Directors may permit other persons than members to use the Library. No member shall detain any book longer than four weeks, after being duly notified that the same is wanted by another member, under a penalty of twenty-five cents per week.

On or before the first Wednesday in May, all books shall be returned, and a Committee of the Directors appointed for that purpose shall examine the Library, and make a report of the condition at the Annual Meeting.

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
THE GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

Digitized by Google

3 2044 097 065 825

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE RUDIMENTS

OF

THE LATIN TONGUE,

OR

A PLAIN AND EASY INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN GRAMMAR:

WHEREIN THE PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE ARE METHODICALLY DIGESTED,

BOTH IN

ENGLISH AND LATIN.

WITH USEFUL NOTES AND OBSERVATIONS, EXPLAINING THE TERMS OF GRAMMAR, AND FURTHER IMPROVING ITS RULES.

By Thomas Ruddiman, M. A.

THE TWENTY-SEVENTH GENUINE EDITION,

CAREFULLY CORRECTED AND IMPROVED.

PHILADELPHIA:

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY ABRAHAM SMALL,

No. 165, *Chesnut Street.*

1822.

Digitized by Google

Educ T 918.22.755

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
JANUARY 26, 1924

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE many incorrect editions of this book, published of late years, have occasioned much trouble and vexation to instructors of youth, who have therefore long wished to see an edition accurately revised and corrected. To attain an object so important to master and scholar, the proprietor of the Scotch edition *(from which this is carefully printed)* obtained the assistance of the Rector of the Grammar school of Aberdeen: who has not only carefully compared this with the latest editions published in the Author's life time, and under his own inspection; but, by marking the *quantity of the Penult Syllable*, where it is most liable to be mistaken, has also, it is hoped, made it easier for beginners to acquire a just pronunciation of the language.

Digitized by Google

THE RUDIMENTS OF

THE LATIN TONGUE,

OR,

A PLAIN AND EASY INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PARS PRIMA.

DE LITERIS et SYLLABIS.

Magister.

QUOT sunt literæ apud Latinos?

Discipulus. Quinque et viginti; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In vocales et consonantes.

M. Quot sunt vocales?

D. Sex; *a. e, i, o, u, y.*

M. Quot sunt consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot sunt dipthongi?

PART FIRST.

OF LETTERS and SYLLABLES.

Master.

HOW many letters are there among the Latins?

Scholar. Five and twenty; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y. z.*

N. How are they divided?

S. Into vowels and consonants.

M. How many vowels are there?

S. Six; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

M. How many consonants are there?

S. Nineteen; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. How many dipthongs are there?

Digitized by Google

D. Quinque ; *ae* (vel *æ*), *oe* (vel *æ*), *au*, *eu*, *ei:* ut, *aetas*, vel *ætas ; ſoena*, vel *fœna ; audio*, *euge*, *hei.*	S. Five ; *ae* (or *æ*), *oe* (or *æ*), *au*, *eu*, *ei :* as, *aetas*, or *ætas*, *ſoena*, or *fœna*, *audio*, *euge*, *hei.*

NOTES.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking any language rightly ; as, *Hebrew*, *Greek*, *Latin*, *Engliſh*, &c.

Latin grammar is the art of speaking rightly the Latin tongue.

The *Rudiments* of that grammar are plain and easy inſtructions, teaching beginners the firſt principles, or the moſt common and neceſſary rules of *Latin.*

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to theſe four heads ; I. Treating of *letters.* II. Of *ſyllables.* III. Of *words.* IV. Of *ſentences.*

Theſe are naturally made up one of another ; for one or more letters make a ſyllable, one or more ſyllables make a word, and two or more words make a ſentence.

A *letter* is a mark or character repreſenting an uncompounded ſound.

K, *Y*, *Z*, are only to be found in words originally Greek ; and *H*, by ſome, is not accounted a letter, but a breathing.

We reckon the *J*, called *Jod* (or *Je*), and the *V*, called *Vau*, two letters diſtinct from *I*, and *U* ; becauſe not only their figures, but their powers or ſounds, are quite different : *J* ſounding like *G* before *E*, and *V* almoſt like *F*.

A *vowel* is a letter that makes a full and perfect ſound by itſelf.

A *conſonant* is a letter that cannot ſound without a vowel.

A *ſyllable* is any one complete ſound.

There can be no ſyllable without a vowel ; and any of the ſix vowels alone, or any vowel with one or more conſonants before or after it, make a ſyllable.

There are, for the moſt part, as many ſyllables in a word as there are vowels in it ; only there are two kinds of ſyllables in which it is otherwiſe, viz. 1. When *U*, with any other vowel, comes after *G*, *Q*, or *S* ; as in *Lingua*, *Qui*, *Suadeo*, where the ſound of *U* vaniſhes, or is little heard. 2. When two vowels join to make a dipthong or double vowel.

A *dipthong* is a ſound compounded of the ſounds of two vowels, ſo as both of them are heard.

Of *dipthongs*, three are proper, viz. *au*, *eu*, *ei*, in which both vowels are heard ; and two *improper*, viz. *æ*, *œ*, in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* ſimple.

Digitized by Google

Some, not without reason, to these five dipthongs add other three; as, *ai* in *Maia*, *oi* in *Troia*, *yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpuia*.

PARS SECUNDA.

De Dictionibus.

M. QUOT sunt partes Orationis?

D. Octo; *Nomen*, *Pronomen*, *Verbum*, *Participium*; *Adverbium*, *Præpositio*, *Interjectio*, *Conjunctio*.

M. Quomodo, dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles et Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen*, *Pronomen*, *Verbum*, *Participium*.

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium*, *Præpositio*, *Interjectio*, *Conjunctio*.

PART SECOND.

Of Words.

M. HOW many parts of speech are there?

S. Eight; *noun*, *pronoun*, *verb*, *participle*; *adverb*, *preposition*, *interjection*, *conjunction*.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into declinable and indeclinable.

M. How many are declinable?

S. Four; *noun*, *pronoun*, *verb*, *participle*.

M. How many are indeclinable?

S. Likewise four; *adverb*, *preposition*, *interjection*, *conjunction*.

A *Word*, (*vox* or *dictio*) is one or more syllables joined together, which men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight classes, called *parts of speech*; but some comprise them all under three classes, viz. *noun*, *verb*, and *adverb*. Under *noun* they comprehend also *pronoun*, and *participle*; and under *adverb* also *preposition*, *interjection*, and *conjunction*. Others, to these, add a fourth class, viz. *adnoun*, comprehending adjectives under it, and restricting *nouns* to *substantives* only. These, by some, are otherwise called *names*, *qualities*, *affirmations*, and *particles*.

The declinable parts of speech are so called, because there is some change made upon them, especially in the last syllables; and this is what we call *declension*, or *declining* of words. But the indeclinable parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last syllable on which these changes do fall, is called the *ending* or *termination* of words.

These changes are made by what grammarians call *accidentia*, i. e. *the accidence* of words.

Digitized by Google

These accidence are commonly reckoned six, viz. *genden, case, number, mood, tense,* and *person.* Of these, gender and case are peculiar to three of the declinable parts of speech, viz. noun, pronoun, and participle; and mood, tense, and person are peculiar to one of them, viz. verb: and number is common to them all.

NOTE 1. That person may also be said to belong to noun or pronoun; but then it is not properly an accident, because no change is made by it in the word.

NOTE 2. That *figure, species,* and *comparison,* which some call accidence, do not properly come under that name, because the words have a different signification from what they had before. *See Chap.* IX.

NOTE 3. That the changes that happen to a noun, pronoun, and participle are in a stricter sense called *declension* or *declination* of them; and the changes that happen to a verb are called *conjugation.*

CAP. I.

De Nomine.

M. QUOMODO declinatur nomen?

D. Per genera, casus, et numeros.

M. Quot sunt genera?

D. Tria; *masculinum, fœminum,* et *neutrum.*

M. Quot sunt casus?

D. Sex; *nominativus, genitivus, dativus, accusativus, vocativus,* et *ablativus.*

M. Quot sunt numeri?

D. Duo; *singularis* et *pluralis.*

M. Quot sunt declinationes?

D. Quinque: *prima, secunda, tertia, quarta,* et *quinta.*

CHAP. I.

Of Noun.

M. How is a noun declined?

S. By genders, cases, and numbers.

M. How many genders are there?

S. Three; *masculine, feminine,* and *neuter.*

M. How many cases are there?

S. Six; *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative,* and *ablative.*

M. How many numbers are there?

S. Two; *singular,* and *plural.*

M. How many declensions are there?

S. Five; *first, second, third, fourth,* and *fifth.*

Digitized by Google

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutrius generis habent nominativum, accusativum, et vocativum, similes in utroque numero: et hi casus in plurali semper desinunt in *a*.

2. Vocativus in singulari plerumque, in plurali semper, est similis nominativo.

3. Dativus et ablativus pluralis sunt similes.

4, Nomina propria plerumque carent plurali.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative, alike in both numbers: and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The vocative, for the most part in the singular [*and*] always in the plural, is like the nominative.

3. The dative and ablative plural are alike.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural.

A *NOUN* is that part of speech which signifies the name or quality of a thing; as *Homo*, a man; *bonus*, good.

A noun is either *substantive* or *adjective*.

A *substantive noun* is, that which signifies the name of a thing; as *arbor*, a tree; *virtus*, virtue; *bonitas*, goodness.

An *adjective noun* is, that which signifies an accident, quality, or property of a thing; as *albus*, white; *felix*, happy; *gravis*, heavy.

A substantive may be distinguished from an adjective these two ways: 1. A substantive can stand in a sentence without an adjective, but an adjective cannot without a substantive; as, I can say, *A stone falls;* but I cannot say, *heavy falls*. 2. If the word *thing*, be joined with an adjective, it will make sense: but if it be joined with a substantive, it will make nonsense. Thus we say, *A good thing, a white thing;* but we do not say, *A man thing, a beast thing*.

A substantive noun is divided into *proper* and *appellative*.

A *proper substantive* is, that which agrees to one particular thing of a kind; as, *Virgilius*, a man's name; *Penelope*, a woman's name; *Scotia*, Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *appellative substantive* is, that which is common to a whole kind of things; as, *vir*, a man; *femina*, a woman; *regnum*, a kingdom; *urbs*, a city; *fluvius*, a river.

Digitized by Google

NOTE. That when a proper name is applied to many, it becomes an appellative, as, *Duodĕcim Cæsăres*, The twelve Cæsars.

GENDER, in a natural sense, is the distinction of sex, or the difference between male and female: but in a grammatical sense, we commonly understand by it, the fitness that a *substantive noun* hath to be joined to an *adjective* of such a *termination*, and not of another.—Therefore,

Of the names of animals, the *hes* are of the masculine, and the *shes* of the feminine gender; but of things without life, and where the diversity of sex is not considered, even of things that have life, some are of the masculine, others of the feminine, and others of the neuter gender, according to the use of the best authors of the Latin tongue.

Besides these three principal genders, there are reckoned also other three less principal, which are nothing else but compounds of the three former, viz. The gender *common to two*, the gender *common to three*, and the *doubtful* gender.

I. The *common gender*, or gender common to two (*Genus commune*, or *Commune duûm*), is masculine and feminine: and belongs to such nouns as agree to both sexes; as *Parens*, a father or mother; *Bos*, an ox or cow.

II. The *gender common to three*, (*Genus commune trium*) is masculine, feminine, and neuter, and belongs only to adjectives: whereof some have three terminations, the first masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter; as, *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the first masculine and feminine, and the second neuter; as, *Mollis*, *molle*, soft. And some have but one termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three genders; as, *Prudens*, wise.

III. The *doubtful gender* (*Genus dubium*), belongs to such nouns as are found in good authors, sometimes in one gender and sometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a day, mas. or fem. *Vulgus*, the rabble, mas. or neut.

[We have excepted out of the number of genders the *epicene* or *promiscuous gender*; for, properly speaking, there is no such gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed *epicene nouns*, that is, some names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered: And these are generally of the gender of their termination, as, *Aquila*, an eagle, fem. because it ends in *a*; *Passer*, a sparrow, mas. because it ends in *er* (*See p.* 12. *and* 15.) So, *Homo*, a man or woman, mas. *Mancipium*, a slave, neut. *Anguis*, a serpent, doubtful.]

Digitized by Google

To distinguish these genders we make use of these three words, *Hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*; which are commonly, though improperly, called *articles*. *Hic*, is the sign of the masculine, *hæc*, of the feminine, *hoc*, of the neuter gender; *Hic et hæc*, of the common to two; *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, of the common to three; *hic* aut *hæc*, *hic* aut *hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we understand the different terminations that nouns receive in declining; so called from *cado*, to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the nominative, which is therefore called *Casus rectus*, the straight case; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The *singular number* denotes one single thing; as, *Homo*, a man; the plural denotes more things than one; as, *Homines*, men.

¶ *Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general view of*

THE DECLENSION OF ENGLISH NOUNS.

I. The English Language hath the two genders of nature, viz. Masculine and Feminine; for animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, according to the difference of their sex; and almost every thing without life is called *IT*. But because all the adjectives of this language are of one termination, it has no occasion for any other genders.

II. The English, properly speaking, has no cases, because there is no alteration made in the words themselves, as in the Latin: but instead thereof we use some little words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus the *nominative case* is the simple noun itself. The particle *OF* put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the *genitive*; *TO* or *FOR* before it, makes the *dative*; the *accusative* is the same with the *nominative*; the *vocative* hath *O* before it; and the *ablative* hath *WITH*, *FROM*, *IN*, *BY*, &c.

NOTE 1. That when a substantive comes before a verb, it is called the *nominative*; when it follows after a verb active, without a preposition intervening, it is called the *accusative*.

NOTE 2. The genitive of words ending in *s* or *es*, or of plural nouns ending in *s*, is expressed by adding the apostrophe; as, the soldiers' valour; for righteousness' sake; the muses' aid.

NOTE 3. That *TO*, the sign of the dative, and *O* of the vocative, are frequently omitted or understood.

Digitized by Google

Besides these, there are other two little words called *ARTICLES*, which are commonly put before substantive nouns. viz. *A* (or *AN* before a vowel or *H*) called the *indefinite article*, and *THE*, called the *definite*.

A or *AN* signifies as much as the adjective *one*, and is put for it; as, *a man*, that is *one man*. *The* is used pronominally and signifies almost the same with *this* or *that*, and *these* or *those*.

NOTE 1. That proper names of men, women, towns, kingdoms, and appellatives, when used in a very general sense have none of these articles; as, *man is mortal, i. e.* every man: *God abhors sin, i. e.* all sins: but proper names of rivers, ships, hills, &c. frequently have *the*: as, *the Thames, the Britannia, the Alps.*

NOTE 2. That the vocative has none of these articles, and the plural wants the indefinite.

NOTE 3. That when an adjective is joined with a substantive, the article is put before both; as, *a good man, the good man*: and the definite is put before the adjective when the substantive is understood; as, *the just shall live by faith*, i. e. *the just man.*

III. The English hath *two numbers* as the Latin, and the plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the singular; as, *book, books.*

Exc. Such as end in *ch, sh, ss*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their singular; as, *church-es, brush-es, witness-es, box-es.* Where it is to be noticed, that such words have a syllable more in the plural than in the singular number; which likewise happens to all words ending in *ce, ge, se, ze*; as, *faces, ages, houses, mazes.* The reason of this proceeds from the near approach these terminations have in their sound to an *s*, so that their plural could not be distinguished from the singular, without the addition of another syllable. And for the same reason, verbs of these terminations have a syllable added to them in their third person singular of the present tense.

Exc. 2 Words that end in *f* or *fe*, have their plural in *ves*; as, *calf, calves; leaf, leaves; wife, wives*; but not always; for *hoof, roof, grief, mischief, dwarf, strife, muff*, &c. retain *f*; *staff* has *staves.*

Exc. 3. Some have their plural in *en*; as, *man, men; woman, women; child, children; chick, chicken; brother, brothers* or *brethren*; (which last is seldom used except in sermons or in a burlesque sense.)

Digitized by Google

Exc. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *die, dice; mouse, mice; louse, lice; goose, geese; foot, feet; tooth, teeth; penny, pence; sow, sows,* and *swine; cow, cows,* and *kine.*

Exc. 5. Some are the same in both numbers; as, *sheep, hose, swine, chicken, pease, deer; fish* and *fishes, mile* and *miles, horse* and *horses.*

Note, That as nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the plural; as, *cherry, cherries.*

AN ENGLISH NOUN IS THUS DECLINED.

Singular.	*Nom.*	A, the King,	Plural.	*Nom.*	The Kings,
	Gen. of	King,		*Gen. of*	Kings,
	Dat. to (for)	King,		*Dat. to* (for)	Kings,
	Acc.	King,		*Acc.*	Kings,
	Voc. O	King,		*Voc. O*	Kings,
	Abl.	with, from, in, by King.		*Abl.*	with, from, in, by Kings.

Prima Declinatio.

M. QUOMODO dignoscitur prima declinatio?

D. Per genitivum et dativum singularem in æ dipthongo.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Quatuor; *a, e, as, es;* ut,

The first Declension.

M. How is the first declension known?

S. By the genitive and dative singular in æ dipthong.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. Four; *a, e, as, es;* as,

Penna, Penelŏpe, Ænēas, Anchīses.

Penna, a pen, Fem.

	Sing.		Plur.		Terminations.
Nom.	penna,	*a pen,*	*Nom.* pennæ,	*pens,*	*a, æ.*
Gen.	pennæ,	*of a pen,*	*Gen.* pennārum,	*of pens,*	*æ, arum.*
Dat.	pennæ,	*to a pen,*	*Dat.* pennis,	*to pens,*	*æ, is.*
Acc.	pennam,	*a pen,*	*Acc.* pennas,	*pens,*	*am, as.*
Voc.	penna,	*O pen,*	*Voc.* pennæ,	*O pens,*	*a, æ.*
Abl.	penna,	*with a pen.*	*Abl.* pennis,	*with pens.*	*a, is.*

*** After the same manner you may decline *lĭtera,* a letter; *via,* a way; *galea,* an helmet; *tunĭca,* a coat; *toga,* a gown.

Digitized by Google

A is a Latin termination; *e*, *as*, and *es* are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are feminine, in *as* and *es* masculine.

RULE. *Filia*, a daughter; *Nata*, a daughter; *Dea*, a goddess; *Anĭma*, the Soul, with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. plural, to distinguish them from masculines in *us* of the second declination.

¶ In declining *Greek Nouns*, observe the following rules:

1. Greek nouns in *as* [and *a*] have sometimes their Accusative [with the poets] in *an*; as, *Æneas*, *Æneam*, vel *Ænean*; *Ossa*, *Ossan*, vel *Ossam*.

2. Those in *es* have their accusative in *en*, and their vocative and ablative in *e*: as,

Nom. Anchĭses,	*Acc.* Anchisen,
Voc. Anchise,	*Abl.* Anchise.

3. Nouns in *e*, have their genitive in *es*, their accusative in *en*, their dative, vocative, and ablative in *e*; as,

Nom. Penĕlope,	*Gen.* Penelopes,
Dat. Penelope,	*Acc.* Penelopen.
Voc. Penelope,	
Abl. Penelope.	

[As to the dative of words in *e*, I have followed *Probus* and *Priscian*, among the ancients; *Lilly*, *Alvarus*, *Vossius*, *Messieurs de Port Royal*, *Johnson*, &c. among the moderns. And though none of them cite any example, yet I remember to have observed three such datives, viz *Cybele* in *Virg. Æn. XI*, 768—*Penelope* in *Martial*, *Epig. XI.* 8, 9; and *Epigone* in *Reinesii Syntag. Inscrip. Class.* 14. *Num.* 85. But *Diomedes* and *Despauter* seem to be of opinion, that these nouns have æ in their dative. The reason that moved the former is, because they thought it incongruous, that seeing nouns in *e* generally follow the Greek, in all their other cases, they should follow the Latin in their dative only, especially since their ablative, which answers to the Greek dative, ends in *e*. As, on the contrary, they maintain, that if such nouns have *æ* in their dative, it must come from a nominative in *a*; of which there are some examples yet extant; And then they may likewise have their accusative in *am*; as, *Penelopam*, *Circam*, in *Plautus*; *Lycambam* in *Terentianus Maurus*. Thus *Helenæ* or *Helenes*, *Helenam*, or *Helenen*, are frequently to be met with in Poets, who also turn such words as commonly end in *a* into *e* in the nominative and vocative, when the measure of their verse requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek words in *es*, have sometimes their nominative

Digitized by Google

and vocative in *a*, (whence comes their genitive and dative in *æ*). And if Mr. Johnson's citations are right, both *es* and *e* have sometimes their accusative in *em*.]

Secunda Declinatio.	*The second Declension.*
M. QUOMODO dignoscitur secunda declinatio ?	M. How is the second declension known ?
D. Per genitivum singularem in *i*, et dativum in *o*.	S. By the genitive singular in *i*, and dative in *o*.
M. Quot habet terminationes ?	M. How many terminations hath it ?
D. Septem ; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on ;* ut,	S. Seven ; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on ;* as,

Gener, a son-in-law ; *vir*, a man ; *satur*, full ; *domĭnus*, a lord ; *regnum*, a kingdom ; *synŏdos*, a synod ; *Albĭon*, the island Albion, or Great Britain.

Gener, *a son-in-law*, Masc.

Sing.	*Plur.*	Terminations.
Nom. gĕner,	*Nom.* generi,	*er, ir, us, i.*
Gen. genĕri,	*Gen.* generōrum,	*i, orum.*
Dat. genero,	*Dat.* generis,	*o, is.*
Acc. generum,	*Acc.* generos,	*um, os.*
Voc. gener,	*Voc.* generi,	*er, ir, e, i.*
Abl. genero.	*Abl.* generis.	*o, is.*

After the same manner you may decline *puer*, a boy ; *socer*, a father-in-law ; *vir*, a man, &c. But *liber*, a book ; *magister*, a master ; *Alexander*, a man's name ; and most other substantives in *er*, lose the *e* before *r* ; thus, *Sing. Nom.* Liber, *Gen.* libri, *Dat.* libro, *Acc.* librum, *Voc.* liber, *Abl.* libro ; *Plur. Nom.* libri, *Gen.* librorum, &c.

Domĭnus, *a lord*, Masc.

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. dominus,	*Nom.* domini,	Ventus, *the wind.*
Gen. domini,	*Gen.* dominorum,	Oculus, *the eye.*
Dat. domino,	*Dat.* dominis,	Fluvius, *a river.*
Acc. dominum,	*Acc.* dominos,	Puteus, *a well.*
Voc. domine,	*Voc.* domini,	Focus, *a common fire.*
Abl. domino.	*Abl.* dominis.	Rogus, *a funeral pile.*

Digitized by Google

Regnum, *a kingdom*, Neut.

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Thus,*
Nom. regnum,	*Nom.* regna,	Templum, *a church.*
Gen. regni,	*Gen.* regnorum,	Ingenium, *wit.*
Dat. regno,	*Dat.* regnis,	Horreum, *a barn.*
Acc. regnum,	*Acc.* regna,	Canticum, *a song.*
Voc. regnum,	*Voc.* regna,	Jugum, *a yoke.*
Abl. regno.	*Abl.* regnis.	

REGULÆ.

1. Nominativus in *us* facit vocativum in *e*; ut, *ventus*, *vente*.

2. Propria nomina in *ĭus* perdunt *us* in vocativo; ut, *Georgius*, *Georgi*.

RULES.

1. The nominative in *us* makes the vocative in *e*; as, *ventus*, *vente*.

2 Proper names in *ĭus* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Georgius*, *Georgi*.

Filius hath also *fili*, and *deus* hath *deus* in the vocative; and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis* than *dei* and *deis*.

The most common terminations of the second declension, are *er* and *us* of the masculine, and *um* of the neuter gender.

There is only one noun in *ir* of this declension, viz. *vir*, a man, with its compounds, *levir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, viz. *satur*, full, (of old *satŭrus*), an adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek terminations, and generally changed into *us*, and *um* in their nominative. These, with other Greek nouns in *us* have sometimes their accusative in *on*.

[We have excluded the termination *eus* from this declension, as belonging more properly to the third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orpheï*, *Orpheа*, *Orpheu*: For when it is of the second declension it is *e-us* of two syllables, and so falls under the termination *us*; *Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i* (contracted *Orphei* and *Orphi*), *Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, (or *Orphe-on*, *Orpheo*.]

Tertia Declinatio.

M. QUOMODO dignoscitur tertia declinatio?

D. Per genitivum singularem in *is*, et dativum in *i*.

The third Declension.

M. HOW is the third declension known?

S. By the genitive singular in *is*, and dative in *i*.

Digitized by Google

M. Quot habet terminationes seu syllabas finales?
D. Septuaginta et unam.
M. Quot habet literas finales?
D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x:* ut,

M. How many terminations or final syllables hath it?
S. Seventy and one.
M. How many final letters hath it?
S. Eleven; *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x:* as,

Diadēma, a crown; *sedīle*, a seat; *sermo*, a speech; *lac*, milk; *David*, a man's name; *animal*, a living creature; *pecten*, a comb; *pater*, a father; *rupes*, a rock; *caput*, the head; *rex*, a king.

Sermo, *a speech*, Masc.

Sing.		*Plur.*		Terminations.
Nom.	sermo,	*Nom.*	sermones,	*a, e, o, &c. es, a.*
Gen.	sermōnis,	*Gen.*	sermonum,	*is, um, ium.*
Dat.	sermoni,	*Dat.*	sermonĭbus,	*i, ibus.*
Acc.	sermonem,	*Acc.*	sermones,	*em, es, a.*
Voc.	sermo,	*Voc.*	sermones,	*a, e, o, &c. es, a.*
Abl.	sermone.	*Abl.*	sermonibus.	*e, i, ibus.*

Sedīle, *a seat*, Neut.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom	sedile,	*Nom.*	sedilia,
Gen.	sedilis,	*Gen.*	sedilium,
Dat.	sedili,	*Dat.*	sedilĭbus,
Acc.	sedile,	*Acc.*	sedilia,
Voc.	sedile,	*Voc.*	sedilia,
Abl.	sedili.	*Abl.*	sedilibus.

As sermo, *so most substantives of this declension in* a, o, e, d, n, t, x, er, or, ur, as, os, us, *(except their Acc. and Voc. when they are neuters, or when they want the plural number). Also, (when they have more syllables in their Gen. than Nom.) all words in* es, *and most of those in* is.

Of the final letters of the third declension, six are peculiar to it, *o, c, d, l, t, x;* the other five are common to other declensions, viz. *a, e, n, r, s.*

The copious final letters are, *o, n, r, s, x.*

The copious final syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, ex.*

All nouns in *a* of this declension, are originally Greek, and have always an *m* before it. There are only two words in *c; lac*, milk; and *halec*, a herring. Words in *d* are proper names of men, and very rare. There are only three words in *t*, viz. *caput*, the head; *sincĭput*, the fore-head; *occĭput*, the hind-he

Digitized by Google

1. The terminations *er*, *or*, *os*, *o*, *n*,
2. The terminations *io*, *do*, *go*, *as*, *es*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *x*, and *s* after a consonant,
3. The terminations *a*, *c*, *e*, *l*, *men*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *ut*,

} are { Masculine. Feminine. Neuter.

But from these there are many exceptions.

NOTE 1. That for the most part the genitive hath a syllable more than the nominative; and where it is otherwise, they generally end in *e*, *es*, or *is*.

NOTE 2. That whatever letter or syllable comes before *is* in the gen. must run through the other cases [except the acc. and voc. sing. of neuters] as, *thema*, *-ătis*, *-ati*, *-ate*, a theme; *sanguis*, *-gŭĭnis*, blood; *iter*, *-tinĕris*, a journey; *carmen*, *-mĭnis*, a verse; *judex*, *-dĭcis*, a judge.

REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e*, et neutra in *al* et *ar*, habent *i* in ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum, in ablativo, faciunt genitivum pluralem in *um*.

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e* et *i* simul, faciunt *ĭum*.

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in ablativo singulari, habent *a* in nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in ablativo, faciunt *ĭa*.

RULES.

1. Nouns in *e*, and neuters in *al* and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative.

2. Those which have *e* only in the ablative, make their genitive plural in *um*.

3. Those which have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make *ĭum*.

4. Neuters which have *e* in their ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

5. But those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ĭa*.

1. EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

1. Some nouns in *is* have *im* in the accusative; as, *vis*, *vim*, strength; *tussis*, the cough; *sitis*, thirst; *buris*, the beam of a plough; *ravis*, hoarseness; *amussis*, a mason's rule. To which add names of rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris*, *Thamĕsis*, which the poets sometimes make in *in*.

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as, *navis*, a ship: *puppis*, the stern; *secūris*, an axe; *clavis*, a key; *febris*, a fever: *pelvis*, a basin; *restis*, a rope: *turris*, a tower; *navem* vel *navim*, &c.

Digitized by Google

2. EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi,* &c. Those that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*; as, *navis, navem* vel *navim, nave* vel *navi.*

2. *Canālis, vectis, bipennis,* have *i*; *avis, amnis, ignis, unguis, rus,* and *imber,* with some others, have *e* or *i,* but most commonly *e.*

3. These neuters in *ar,* have *e*; *far, jubar, nectar,* and *hepar*: *Sal* also has *sale.*

3. EXCEPTIONS IN THE GENITIVE PLURAL.

1. Nouns of one syllable in *as, is,* and *s,* with a consonant before it, have *ium*; as, *as assium*; *lis litium*; *urbs urbium.*

2. Also nouns in *es* and *is,* not increasing their genitive; as, *vallis, vallium*; *rupes, rupium.* Except *panis, canis, vates,* and *volucris.*

3. To which add *caro, cor, cos, dos, mus, nix, nox, linter, sal, os, ossis.*

NOTE. That when the genitive plural ends in *ium,* the accusative frequently, instead of *es,* has *eis,* or *is*; as, *omneis, parteis,* or *omnis, partis,* for *omnes, partes.*

OF GREEK NOUNS.

I. Greek nouns have sometimes their genitive in *os.* And these are 1. Such as increase their genitive with *d*; as, Arcas, Arcădis vel Arcados, an Arcadian; Brisēis, -eidis vel -eidos, a woman's name. 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a vowel before it, as hærĕsis, -eos vel -ios, a heresy. 3. To these add Sphyngos, Strymōnos, and panos.

NOTE. That *is* is more frequent, except in the second kind, and patronymics of the first.

II. 1. Greek words which increase their genitive in *is* or *os* not pure (i. e. with a consonant before it) have frequently their accusative singular in *a* and plural in *as*; as, Lampas, lampădis, lampada, lampadas; also, Minos, Minōis, Minoa; Tros, Trōis, Troa, Troas; Heros, herōis, heroa, hereas.

2. Words in *is* or *ys,* whose genitive ends in *os* pure, have their accusative in *im* or *in,* and *ym* or *yn*; as hæresis, -eos, hæresim or -in; Chelys, -lyos, a lute; chelym or -lyn. Of words in *is,* which have their genitive in *dis* or *dos,* masculines have their accusative for the most part in *im* or *in,* seldom in *dem,* and never in *da,* that I know of; as, Paris, Parim, vel Parin, vel

Digitized by Google

Parĭdem: Feminines have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, Briseis, Briseidem vel Briseida.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their genitive, and *o* in their other cases; as, Dido, Didus, Dido, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin form, Didonis, Didoni, &c. which Juno (as being of a Latin original) always follows.

IV. Greek nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their vocative; as, Chalchas, Achilles, Paris, Tiphys, Orpheus; Calcha, Achille, Pari, Tiphy, Orpheu.

V. Greek nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *ôn* in their genitive plural; as Epigrammatôn Hœreseôn), and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek nouns in *ma*, have most frequently *is* in their dative and ablative plural; as, Poëma, poemătis, because of old they said poëmatum, -ti. Bos has boum, and bobus or bubus.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. QUOMODO dignoscitur quarta declinatio?

D. Per genitivum singularem in *us*, et dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* et *u*; ut,

The fourth Declension.

M. HOW is the fourth declension known?

S. By the genitive singular in *us*, and the dative in *ui*.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. Two; *us* and *u*; as,

Fructus, fruit; Cornu, a horn.

Fructus, fruit, Masc.

	Sing.	*Plur.*	Terminations.
Nom.	fructus,	*Nom.* fructus,	us, us.
Gen.	fructus,	*Gen.* fructuum,	us, uum.
Dat.	fructui,	*Dat.* fructĭbus,	ui, ibus.
Acc.	fructum,	*Acc.* fructus,	um, us.
Voc.	fructus,	*Voc.* fructus,	us, us.
Abl.	fructu.	*Abl.* fructibus.	u, ibus.

Cornu, a horn, Neut.

	Sing.	*Plur.*	
Nom.	cornu,	*Nom.* cornŭa,	*As* fructus, *so* vultus, *the countenance*, manus, *the hand*, Fem. casus, *a fall* or *chance*.
Gen.	cornu,	*Gen.* cornuum,	
Dat.	cornu,	*Dat.* cornibus,	
Acc.	cornu,	*Acc.* cornua,	*As* cornu, *so* genu, *the knee*, veru, *a spit*, tonitru, *thunder*.
Voc.	cornu,	*Voc.* cornua,	
Abl.	cornu.	*Abl.* cornibus.	

Digitized by Google

Nouns in *us* of this declension are generally masculine, and those in *u* all neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

Rule. Some nouns have ŭbus in their dative and ablative plural, viz. Arcus, a bow; artus, a joint; lacus, a lake; acus, a needle; portus, a port or harbour; partus, a birth; tribus, a tribe; veru, a spit.

Note. That of old, nouns of this declension belonged to the third, and were declined as, grus, gruis, a crane; thus, fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructue: Fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructuibus. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative sing. and genitive plur. There are some examples of the genitive in *uis* yet extant, as, on the contrary, there are several of the dative in *u*.

The blessed name Jesus, is thus declined.

Sing.		*Plur. wanting.*
Nom.	Jēsus,	
Gen.	Jesu,	
Dat.	Jesu,	
Acc.	Jesum,	
Voc.	Jesu,	
Abl.	Jesu.	

Domus, *a house*, Feminine, is thus declined.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	domus,	*Nom.*	domus,
Gen.	domûs *v.* -mi,	*Gen.*	domorum *v.* -uum,
Dat.	domui *v.* -mo,	*Dat.*	domĭbus,
Acc.	domum,	*Acc.*	domos *v.* -us,
Voc.	domus,	*Voc.*	domus,
Abl.	domo.	*Abl.*	domibus.

Note. That the genitive *domi* is only used when it signifies at home: *domo*, the dative, is found in Horace, Epist. I. 10, 13.

Quinta Declinatio.

M. QUOMODO dignoscitur quinta declinatio?

D. Per genitivum et dativum singularem in *ei*.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe *es*; ut,

The fifth Declension.

M. HOW is the fifth declension known?

S. By the genitive and dative singular in *ei*.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. One, namely *es*; as,

Res, a thing, Fem.

Sing.		*Plur.*		Terminations.
Nom.	res,	*Nom.*	res,	es, es.
Gen.	rei,	*Gen.*	rerum,	ei, erum.
Dat.	rei,	*Dat.*	rebus,	ei, ebus.
Acc.	rem,	*Acc.*	res,	em es.
Voc.	res,	*Voc.*	res,	es, es.
Abl.	re.	*Abl.*	rebus.	e, ebus.

Digitized by Google

Nouns of the fifth declension are not above fifty; and are all feminine, except dies, a day, masc. or fem. and meridies, the mid-day or noon, masc.

All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except three; Fides, faith; spes, hope; res, a thing.

And all nouns in *ies*, are of the fifth, except these four; abies, a fir-tree; aries, a ram; paries, a wall; and quies, rest; which are of the third.

Most nouns of this declension want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural; and many of them want the plural altogether.

GENERAL REMARKS ON ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

1. The genitive plural of the first four is sometimes contracted, especially by poets: as, Cœlicŏlûm, Deûm, Mensûm, Currûm; for Cœlicolarum, Deorum, Mensium, Curruum.

2. When the genitive of the second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by poets; as, Tugŭri, for Tugurii. We read also, Aulāi for aulæ, in the first; and fide for fidei in the fifth; and so of other like words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

ADJECTIVA sunt vel primæ et secundæ declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum.

Omnia adjectiva habentia tres terminationes (præter* undecim) sunt primæ et secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas terminationes habent, sunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ et secundæ habent masculinum in *us*† vel *er*; femininum semper in *a*; neutrum semper in *um*; ut,

The Declension of Adjectives.

ADJECTIVES are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

All adjectives having three terminations (except* eleven) are of the first and second; but those which have one or two terminations are of the third.

Adjectives of the first and second have their masculine in *us*† or *er*; their feminine always in *a*; and their neuter always in *um*; as,

Bŏnus, bona, bonum, good; *Tĕner, tenĕra, tenerum,* tender.

* Viz. Acer, alăcer, celer, celĕber, salūber, volŭcer, campester, equester, pedester, paluster, silvester, which are of the third, and have their masculine in *er* or *is*, their feminine in *is*, and neuter in *e*.

† For satur, full, was of old satŭrus.

Digitized by Google

Bŏnus, bona, bonum, *good.*

Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom. bonus,	-a,	-um,	*Nom.*	boni,	-æ,	-a,
Gen. boni,	-æ,	-i,	*Gen.*	bonorum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat. bono,	-æ,	-o,	*Dat.*	bonis,	-is,	-is,
Acc. bonum,	-am,	-um,	*Acc.*	bonos,	-as,	-a,
Voc. bone,	-a,	-um,	*Voc.*	boni,	-æ,	-a,
Abl. bono,	-a,	-o.	*Abl.*	bonis,	-is,	-is.

Tĕner, teněra, teněrum, *tender.*

Sing.				*Plur.*		
N. ten-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	*N.*	ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	*G.*	ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	*D.*	ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	*A.*	ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*V.*	ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero.	*A.*	ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three substantives of the same terminations, and declensions: As in the examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera*, like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the ancients, as is clear from *Varro*, lib. 3. *de Anal.* declined every gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this method at first, especially if the boy is of a slow capacity.

Of adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, *-era*, *-erum*, wretched; *liber*, *-era*, *-erum*, free; and all compounds in *ger* and *fer*; others lose it, as *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*, black.

These following adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its compounds; *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *utervis*, which of the two you please; *alterŭter*, the one or the other; have their genitive singular in *ius*, and dative in *i*.

Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.

1. Unius terminationis.

Adjectives of the third Declension.

1. Of one termination.

Digitized by Google

Felix, *happy*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	fel-ix	-ix	-ix	*N.*	fel-īces	-īces	-īcia
G.	fel-īcis	-īcis	-īcis	*G.*	fel-icium	-icium	-icium
D.	fel-ici	-ici	-ici	*D.*	fel-icĭbus	-icibus	-icibus
A.	fel-icem	-icem	-ix	*A.*	fel-ices	-ices	-icia
V.	fel-ix	-ix	-ix	*V.*	fel-ices	-ices	-icia
A.	fel-ice *v.* -ici, *&c.*			*A.*	fel-icibus	-icibus	-icibus.

2. Duarum terminationum. | 2. Of two terminations.

Mitis, mite, *meek*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	mītis	mitis	mite	*N.*	mites	mites	mitia
G.	mitis	mitis	mitis	*G.*	mitium	mitium	mitium
D.	miti	miti	miti	*D.*	mitibus	mitibus	mitibus
A.	mitem	mitem	mite	*A.*	mites	mites	mitia
V.	mitis	mitis	mite	*V.*	mites	mites	mitia
A.	miti	miti	miti.	*A.*	mitibus	mitibus	mitibus.

Mitior, mitius, *meeker*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	miti-or	-or	-us	*N.*	miti-ōres	-ōres	-ōra
G.	miti-ōris	-ōris	-ōris	*G.*	miti-orum	-orum	-orum
D.	miti-ori	-ori	-ori	*D.*	miti-oribus	-oribus	-oribus
A.	miti-orem	-orem	-us	*A.*	miti-ores	-ores	-ora
V.	miti-or	-or	-us	*V.*	miti-ores	-ores	-ora
A.	miti-ore *v.* -ori, *&c.*			*A.*	miti-oribus	-oribus	-oribus.

3. Trium terminationum. | 3. Of three terminations.

Acer *vel* acris, acris, acre, *sharp*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	a-cer *v.* -cris	-cris	-cre	*N.*	a-cres	-cres	-cria
G.	a-cris	-cris	-cris	*G.*	a-crium	-crium	-crium
D.	a-cri	-cri	-cri	*D.*	a-cribus	-cribus	-cribus
A.	a-crem	-crem	-cre	*A.*	a-cres	-cres	-cria
V.	a-cer *v.* -cris	-cris	-cre	*V.*	a-cres	-cres	-cria
A.	a-cri	-cri	-cri.	*A.*	a-cribus	-cribus	-cribus.

REGULÆ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in ablativo singulari.

2. At si neutrum sit in *e*, ablativus habet *i* tantum.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular.

2. But if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

Digitized by Google

3. Genitivus pluralis desinit in *ium;* et neutrum nominativi, accusativi, et vocativi in *ia.*	3. The genitive plural ends in *ium;* and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative in *ia.*
4. Excipe comparativa, quæ *um* et *a* postulant.	4. Except comparatives which require *um* and *a.*

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Dives, hospes, sospes, superstes, juvĕnis, senex, and pauper, have *e* in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

2. Compos, impos, consors, inops, vigil, supplex, uber, degĕner, and puber: also compounds ending in *ceps, fex, pes,* and *corpor;* as princeps, artĭfex, bipes, tricorpor, have *um* not *ium.*

NOTE. That all these have seldom the neuter singular, and never almost the neuter plural in the nom. and acc. To which add memor, which has memŏri and memorum, and locuples, which has locupletium; also deses, reses, hebes, perpes, præpes, teres, concŏlor, versicŏlor; which being hardly to be met with in the genitive plural, 'tis a doubt whether they should have *um* or *ium,* though I incline most to the former.

3. Par has pări; vetus, vetĕra, and veterum; plus (which hath only the neuter in the singular) has plure, and plures, plura, (or pluria) plurium.

NOTE 1. That comparatives and adjectives in *ns,* have more frequently *e* than *i,* and participles in the ablatives called absolute have generally *e;* as Carolo regnante, not regnanti.

NOTE 2. That adjectives joined with substantives neuter hardly ever have *e,* but *i;* as, victrīci ferro, not victrice.

NOTE 3. That adjectives, when they are put substantively, have oft-times *e;* as, affīnis, familiāris, rivālis, sodālis, &c. So par, a match; as, Cum pare quæque suo coëunt. Ovid.

OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE ordinal and multiplicative numbers (see Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The distributive want the singular, as also do the cardinal, except unus, which is declined as in *p.* 16, and hath the plural, when joined with a substantive that wanteth the sing. as, unæ literæ, one letter; una mœnia, one wall; or when several particulars are considered complexly, as making

Digitized by Google

one compound; as, Uni sex dies, i. e. One space of six days; Una vestimenta, i. e. One suit of apparel. *Plaut.*

Duo and *Tres* are declined after this manner.

	Plur.			*Plur.*	
N. duo	duæ	duo	*N.* tres	tres	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	*G.* trium	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	*D.* tribus	tribus	tribus
A. duos *v.* o	duas	duo	*A.* tres	tres	tria
V. duo	duæ	duo	*V.* tres	tres	tria
A. duobus	duabus	duobus.	*A.* tribus	tribus	tribus.

Ambo, *both*, is declined as duo.

2. From quatuor to centum are all indeclinable.

3. From centum to mille they are declined thus; *ducenti, ducentæ, ducenta; ducentorum, ducentarum, ducentorum, &c.*

4. As to mille, Varro and all the grammarians after him down to the last age, make it (when it is put before a gen. plur.) a substantive indeclinable in the sing. and in the plur. declined, millia, millium, millibus; but when it hath a substantive joined to it in any other case, they make it an adjective plural indeclinable. But Scioppius, and after him Gronovius, contend that mille is always an adjective plural; and under that termination of all cases and genders; but that it hath two neuters, hæc mille, and hæc millia; that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that, where it seems to be a substantive governing a gen. multitudo, numerus, manus, pecunia, pondus, spatium, corpus, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this sentiment; but now the weighty reasons adduced by the most accurate Perizonius incline me rather to follow the ancient grammarians.

After the declension of substantives and adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the learner with some examples of a substantive and adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the declensions, and render the dependence of the adjective upon the substantive more familiar to him.—Let the examples at first be of the same terminations and declensions; as, Dominus justus, a just lord; Penna bona, a good pen; Ingenium eximium, an excellent wit; afterwards let them be different in one or both; as, Puer probus, a good boy; Lectio facilis, an easy lesson; Poeta optimus, an excellent poet; Fructus dulcis, sweet fruit; Dies faustus, a happy day, &c. And if the boy has as yet been taught writing, let him write them either in the school, or at home, to be revised by the master next day.

Digitized by Google

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following scheme:

IRREGULAR NOUNS are,

1. DEFECTIVE.
   - 1. Substantives. Wanting.
     - 1. *Number*, { Sing. as, *Iiberi*, *Minæ*, *Arma*. / Plur. as, *Aër*, *Humus*, *Ævum*.
     - 2. *Cases*, { Nom. and Voc. Sing. as *Ditionis*. / Gen. Sing. as *Chaos*. / Dat. Sing. as *Plus*. / Voc. Sing. as *Ego*. / Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as, *Mel*.
     - or having only { Three; as, *Dica*, *Dicam*, *Dicas*. / Two; as, *Suppetiæ*, *Suppetias*. / One; as, *Dicis*, *Inficias*, *Noctu*.
   - 2. Adjectives. Wanting.
     - 1. *Gender*, { Mas. as, *Cætera*, *Cæterum*. / Fem. as, *Quisquis*, *Quicquid*. / Neut. as, *Compos*. / Mas. and Fem. as, *Plus*. / Mas. and Neut. as, *Sicelis*. / Fem. and Neut. as, *Tres*.
     - 2. *Number*, { Plur. as. *Unusquisque*. / Sing. as, *Centum*.
     - 3. *Case*, { Voc. as, *Nullus*. / Dat. and Abl. as, *Tantundem*.
     - or having the vocative only; as, *Macte*, *Macti*.
2. VARIABLE.
   - 1. Too much.
     - In *gender* having *Sing.* and *Plural.*
       - Masc. and Neut. as, *Mœnalus*, *Mœnala*.
       - Masc. and Fem. as, *Locus*, *-ci* & *-ca*.
       - Fem. and Neut. as, *Carbasus*, *Carbasa*.
       - Neut. and Masc. as, *Cœlum*, *Cœli*.
       - Neut. and Fem. as, *Epulum*, *Epulæ*.
       - Neut. and M. as, *Frænum*, *-ni*, & *-na*.
     - In *Declension* being of the { 2. and 1. as, *Deliciæ*, *Deliciæ*. / 2. and 4. as, *Laurus*, *-ri*, & *-rûs*. / 3 and 2. as, *Vas*, *-sis*, *-sa*, *-sorum*.
   - 2. Too little, as *Indeclinables*. { altogether; as, *Fas*. / in the Sing. as, *Cornu*.
3. REDUNDANT.
   - In *Termination*, { only; as, *Helena*, *Helene*. / and Gender; as, *Tignus*, *Tignum*. / and Decl. as, *Materia*, *Materies*. / Gend. and Decl. as, *Æther*, *Æthra*.
   - In *Gender*, only; as, *Hic* and *Hoc Vulgus*.
   - In *Declension*, { only; as, *Fames*, *Famis*, of the 3d, Abl. *fame*, of the 5th, because the last syllable is always long with the poets.

Digitized by Google

NOTE 1. That the defective nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE 2. That those which vary too little, may be ranked under the defective; and those which vary too much, under the redundant, e. g. *cœli, cœlorum*, comes not from *cœlum*, but from *cœlus*; and *vasa, vasorum*, not from *vas, vasis*, but from *vasum, vasi*; but custom, which alone gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

DE COMPARATIONE.

M. QUOT sunt gradus comparationis?

D. Tres; positivus, comparativus, et superlativus.

M. Quotæ declinationis sunt hi gradus?

D. Positivus est adjectivum primæ et secundæ declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum; comparativus est semper tertiæ; superlativus semper primæ et secundæ.

M. Unde formatur comparativus gradus?

D. A proximo casu, positivi in *i*, addendo pro masculino et fœminino syllabam *or*, et *us* pro neutro; ut,

OF COMPARISON.

M. HOW many degrees of comparison are there?

S. Three; the positive, comparative, and superlative.

M. Of what declension are these degrees?

S. The positive is an adjective of the first and second declension, or third only; the comparative is always of the third; the superlative always of the first and second.

M. Whence is the comparative degree formed?

S. From the next case of the positive in *i*, by adding for the masculine and feminine the syllable *or*, and *us* for the neuter; as,

Doctus, learned; gen. *docti, doctior*, and *doctius*, more learned; *mitis*, meek; dat. *miti; mitior* and *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur superlativus?

D. 1. Si positivus desinat in *er*, superlativus formatur addendo *rĭmus*; ut,

M. Whence is the superlative formed?

S. 1. If the positive ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rĭmus*; as,

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *pauper*, poor, *pauperrimus*, most poor.

Digitized by Google

. Si positivus non desinat in *er*, superlativus formatur a proximo casu in *i*, addendo *ssĭmus*, ut,

2. If the positive ends not in *er*, the superlative is formed from the next case in *i*, by adding *ssĭmus*; as,

Gen. *Docti*, *doctissĭmus*, most learned: Dat. *Miti*, *mitissĭmus*, most meek.

By grammatical COMPARISON, we understand three adjective nouns, of which the two last are formed from the first, and import comparison with it; that is, heightening or lessening of its signification.

Consequently those adjectives only which are capable of having their signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the quality of a thing simply and absolutely; as, *durus*, hard; *parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that quality; as, *durior*, harder; *minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high or very low degree; as, *durissĭmus*, hardest or most hard; *minĭmus*, very little or least.

The positive hath various terminations; the comparative ends always in *or* and *us*: the superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[The positive, properly speaking, is no degree of comparison, for it does not compare things together; however, it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon, and formed from it.]

The sign of the comparative in our language is the syllable *er* added to an adjective, or the word *more* put before it.

The sign of the superlative is the syllable *est* added to an adjective, or the word *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE. That when the positive is a long word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the comparative by the word *more*, and the superlative by *most* or *very* put before it.

And for the like reason, the Latin comparative is sometimes made by *magis*, and the superlative by *valde* or *maxime*, put before the positive. And these are particularly used, when the positive ends in *us* with a vowel before it; as, *Pius*, godly; *arduus*, high; *idoneus*, fit; though not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus	melior	optĭmus:	Good	better	best.
Malus	pejor	pessĭmus:	Evil	worse	worst.
Magnus	major	maxĭmus:	Great	greater	greatest.
Parvus	minor	minĭmus:	Little	less	least.

Digitized by Google

Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum; much, more, most.

2. Facĭlis, *easy*; humĭlis, *low*; simĭlis, *like*; make their superlative by changing *is* into *lĭmus*; thus, facillĭmus, humillĭmus, simillĭmus.

3. Exter, outward; citer, hither; supĕrus, above; inferus, below; postĕrus, behind; have regular comparatives; but their superlatives are, extrēmus (or extĭmus), uttermost; citĭmus, hithermost; suprēmus (or summus), uppermost, highest, last; infĭmus (or imus), lowest; postrēmus (or postŭmus), latest or last.

4. Compounds in dicus, loquus, ficus and volus, have *entior* and *entissĭmus*; as, maledĭcus, one that raileth; magnilŏquus, one that boasteth; benefĭcus, beneficent; malevŏlus, malevolent.

But these seem rather to come from participles or nouns in *ens*. Besides, the comparatives and superlatives of adjectives derived from loquor and facio are very rare; and Terence has mirificissimus, and Plautus has mendaciloquius.

5. Prior, former, has primus, first; ulterior, farther, ultĭmus, farthest or last; proprior, nearer, proximus, nearest or next; ocior, swifter, ocissimus, swiftest; their positives being out of use, or quite wanting. Proximus hath also another comparative formed from it, viz. proximior.

6. There are also a great many other adjectives capable of having their signification increased, which yet want one or more of these degrees of comparison; as, albus, white, without comparative and superlative; ingens, great, ingentior, greater, without the superlative; sacer, holy, sacerrimus, most holy, without the comparative; anterior, former, without positive and superlative.

¶ These three degrees of comparison being nothing else but three distinct adjectives, may be declined either severally, each by itself, or jointly together; respect still being had to their declensions. But the first way is much easier, and will answer all the purposes of comparison as well as the other.

CAP. II.

De Pronomine.

M. QUOT sunt pronomina* simplicia?

D. Octodecim; ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui;

CHAP. II.

Of Pronoun.

M. HOW many* simple pronouns are there?

S. Eighteen; ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui

* See Chap. IX.

Digitized by Google

meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, et cujas.

¶ Ex his tria sunt substantiva, *ego, tu, sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt adjectiva.

meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.

¶ Of these three are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, *I.*

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom.	ĕgo, *I*	*Nom.*	nos, *we*
Gen.	mei, *of me*	*Gen.*	nostrûm *v.* nostri, *of us*
Dat.	mihi, *to me*	*Dat.*	nōbis, *to us*
Acc.	me, *me*	*Acc.*	nos, *us*
Voc.	———	*Voc.*	———
Abl.	me, *with me.*	*Abl.*	nobis, *with us.*

Tu, *thou* or *you.*

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom.	tu, *thou*	*Nom.*	vos, *ye* [*you*]
Gen.	tui, *of thee*	*Gen.*	vestrûm *v.* vestri, *of you*
Dat.	tĭbi, *to thee*	*Dat.*	vōbis, *to you*
Acc.	te, *thee*	*Acc.*	vos, *you*
Voc.	tu, *O thou*	*Voc.*	vos, *O ye* [*you*]
Abl.	te, *with thee.*	*Abl.*	vobis, *with you.*

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom.	———	*Nom.*	———
Gen.	sui, *of himself, &c.*	*Gen.*	sui, *of themselves*
Dat.	sibi, *to himself*	*Dat.*	sibi, *to themselves*
Acc.	se, *himself*	*Acc.*	se, *themselves*
Voc.	———	*Voc.*	———
Abl.	se, *with himself.*	*Abl.*	se, *with themselves.*

A PRONOUN is an irregular kind of noun; or it is a part of speech which has respect to, and supplies the place of a noun; as, instead of your name, I say, *tu*, thou or you; instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I say, *Ille fecit*, He did it, viz. *James.*

NOTE 1. That the dative *mihi*, is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mī.*

NOTE 2. That of old the genitive plural of *ego* was *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, (of which there are several examples in Plautus and Terence) which were afterwards contracted into *nostrûm* and *vestrûm.*

Digitized by Google

NOTE 3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after numerals, partitives, comparatives, and superlatives; and *Nostri* and *Vestri* after other nouns and verbs; though there want not some examples of these last with *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, even in *Cicero* himself, as *Vossius* shews.

Ille, illa, illud, *He, she, that* or *it.*

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	*Nom.*	illi	illæ	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	*Gen.*	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	*Dat.*	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	*Acc.*	illos	illas	illa
Voc.	ille	illa	illud	*Voc.*	illi	illæ	illa
Abl.	illo	illa	illo.	*Abl.*	illis	illis	illis.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *He himself, she herself, itself;* and iste, ista, istud, *he, she, that*, are declined as ille, save only that ipse hath ipsum, in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. sing. neut.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *This.*

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	hic	hæc	hoc	*Nom.*	hi	hæ	hæc
Gen.	hujus	hujus	hujus	*Gen.*	horum	harum	horum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	*Dat.*	his	his	his
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	*Acc.*	hos	has	hæc
Voc.	hic	hæc	hoc	*Voc.*	hi	hæ	hæc
Abl.	hoc	hac	hoc.	*Abl.*	his	his	his

Is, ea id, *He, she, it.*

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
Nom.	is	ea	id	*Nom.*	ii	eæ	ea
Gen.	ejus	ejus	ejus	*Gen.*	eorum	earum	eorum
Dat.	ei	ei	ei	*Dat.*	iis *v.* eis		
Acc.	eum	eam	id	*Acc.*	eos	eas	ea
Voc.	——	——	——	*Voc.*	——	——	——
Abl.	eo	ea	eo.	*Abl.*	iis *v.* eis.		

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid? *Who, which, what?*

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	quis	quæ	quod *v.* quid	*N.*	qui	quæ	quæ
G.	cujus	cujus	cujus	*G.*	quorum	quarum	quorum
D.	cui	cui	cui	*D.*	queis *v.* quibus		
A.	quem	quam	quod *v.* quid	*A.*	quos	quas	quæ
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	quo	qua	quo.	*A.*	queis *v.* quibus.		

Digitized by Google

Qui, quæ, quod, *Who, which, that.*

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
N. qui	quæ	quod	*N.* qui	quæ	quæ
G. cujus	cujus	cujus	*G.* quorum	quarum	quorum
D. cui	cui	cui	*D.* queis *v.* quibus		
A. quem	quam	quod	*A.* quos	quas	quæ
V. ——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A. quo	qua	quo.	*A.* queis *v.* quibus.		

Meus, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus, -a, -um*; and, *noster*, our or ours; *vester*, your or yours; like *pulcher, -chra, -chrum*, of the first and second declension. But *tuus, suus*, and *vester*, want the vocative; *noster* and *meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi* (and sometimes *meus*) in the masculine singular.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension; gen. *nostratis*, dat. *nostrati*, &c.

Note 1. That all nouns and pronouns which one cannot call upon, or address himself unto, want the vocative. In consequence of which rule, many nouns, as, *nullus, nemo, qualis, quantus, quot*, &c. and several pronouns, as, *ego, sui, quis*, &c. want the vocative; but not so many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which reason, we have given vocatives to *ille, ipse, hic*, and *idem*, therein following the judgment of the great *Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal*, and *Johnson*, which they support by the following authorities:

Esto nunc, Sol, testis, et hæc mihi terra precanti. Virg. Æn. 12.

Tu mihi libertas illa paterna veni. Tibul. lib. 2. El. 4.

O nox illa, quæ, pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. Cic. pro Flac.

Ipse meas æther accipe summe preces. Ovid in Ibin.

And the vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid, Met. 15.

——————Quique fuisti

Hippolites, dixit, nunc idem Virbius esto.

Though all authors before them will only allow four pronouns, viz. *Tu, meus, noster*, and *nostras*, to have the vocative.

Note 2. That *qui* is sometimes used for *quis*; as, Cic. *qui tantus fuit labor?* Ter. *qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

Note 3. That *quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod, quodvis, quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a substantive of the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid, quidvis, quiddam*, &c. either have no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive; whence it is, that these last are commonly reckoned substantives. But that *quid*, as well as *quod*, is originally an adjective, its signification plainly shews; otherwise, we shall make *multum, plus, tantum, quantum*, &c. also substantives, when

Digitized by Google

they govern the genitive; which yet most grammarians agree to be adjectives, having the common word *negotium* understood.

NOTE 4. That *qui*, the relative, hath sometimes *qui* in the ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all genders and numbers, as Mr. Johnson evinces by a great many examples out of Plautus and Terence; to which he might have added one out of C. Nepos. III. 3.

NOTE 5. That *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*, are declined like Gentile or national nouns in *as* in the third declension, in imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpīnas*, *Fidēnas*, *Privernas*, a man, woman, or thing, of or belonging to the town of Arpinum, Fidenæ, or Privernum, and may have the neuter as well as these; (for, as Cic. has *Iter Arpinas*; and Liv. *Bellum Privernas*, so Colum. has *arbustum nostras*; and Cic. *nostratia verba*) contrary to what Linacer teaches.

[I pass over taking notice, that in old authors, especially Plautus, we find *quis* and *quisquis* sometimes of the feminine gender; *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui*; *hisce* for *hi*; *hibus*, *ibus*, for *his*, *iis*; *illæ*, *ipsæ*, *istæ*, *quæ*, in the genitive or dative singular feminine; *em* for *eum*; *istes* for *istos*; *quoius*, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*; because they are extraordinary.]

OF COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *quis* and *qui*, with some other word or syllable. In these *quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last part of the word compounded; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, when it is put first, are *quisnam*, who; *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

		Nom.		*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quisnam	quænam	quodnam	*v.* quidnam.	cujusnam.	cuinam.
Quispiam	quæpiam	quodpiam	*v.* quidpiam.	cujuspiam.	cuipiam.
Quisquam	quæquam	quodquam	*v.* quidquam.	cujusquam.	cuiquam.
Quisque	quæque	quodque	*v.* quidque.	cujusque.	cuique.
Quisquis	——	quidquid	*v.* quicquid.	cujuscujus.	cuicui.

And so forth in their other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* hath no feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*, accusative, *quenquam* without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

Digitized by Google

2. The compounds of *quis*, when it is put last are, *aliquis*, some; *ecquis*, who? To which some add *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined:

	Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Aliquis	aliqua	aliquod	*v.* aliquid.	alicujus.	alicui.
Ecquis	ecqua *v.* ecquæ	ecquod	*v.* ecquid.	eccujus.	eccui.
Si quis	si qua	si quod	*v.* si quid.	si cujus.	si cui.
Ne quis	ne qua	ne quod	*v.* ne quid.	ne cujus.	ne cui.
Num quis	num qua	num quod	*v.* num quid.	num cujus.	num cui.

NOTE. That these, and only these have *qua* in the nominative singular feminine, and nominative and accusative plural neuter.

3. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one whom you please; and are thus declined:

	Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quicunque	quæcunque	quodcunque.		cujuscunque.	cuicunque.
Quidam	quædam	quoddam	*v.* quiddam.	cujusdam.	cuidam.
Quilibet	quælibet	quodlibet	*v.* quidlibet.	cujuslibet.	cuilibet.
Quivis	quævis	quodvis	*v.* quidvis.	cujusvis.	cuivis.

Some of these are twice compounded; as, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, every one. The first is scarce declined beyond its nominative, and the second wants its plural.

NOTE 1. That all these compounds want the vocative, except quisque, aliquis, quilibet, unusquisque, and perhaps some others. Vid. Voss. *p.* 335.

NOTE 2. That all these compounds have seldom or never queis, but quibus, in their dative and ablative plural.

NOTE 3. That quidam hath quendam, quandam, quoddam vel quiddam, in the accusative singular; and quorundam, quarundam, quorundam, in the genitive plural; *n* being put instead of *m* for the better sound, as it is for the same reason in these cases of idem.

II. Some reckon amongst compound pronouns *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, with *ipse*; but in the best books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary, because of *te ipse*, and *se ipse*, where the two words are of different cases.

III. *Is* is compounded with the syllable *dem*, and contracted into *idem*, the same; which is thus declined:

	Sing.				*Plur.*	
Nom. idem	eadem	idem	*Nom.*	iidem	eædem	eadem
Gen. ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem	*Gen.*	eorundem	earundem	eorundem
Dat. eidem	eidem	eidem	*Dat.*	eisdem *v.* iisdem		
Acc. eundem	eandem	idem	*Acc.*	eosdem	easdem	eadem
Voc. idem	eadem	idem	*Voc.*	iidem	eædem	eadem
Abl. eodem	eadem	eodem.	*Abl.*	eisdem *v.* iisdem.		

Digitized by Google

IV. Most of the other compound pronouns are only to be found in certain cases and genders; as,

1. Of *iste* and *hic* is compounded, Nom. *isthic, isthæc, isthoc* vel *isthuc*. Acc. *isthunc, isthanc, isthoc* vel *isthuc*. Abl. *isthoc, isthac, isthoc*. Nom. and Acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*.

2. Of *ecce* and *is*, is compounded, *eccum, eccam*, plur. *eccos, eccas*; and from *ecce* and *ille, ellum, ellam; ellos, ellas*, in the accusatives.

3. Of *modus* and *is, hic iste* and *quis*, are compounded these genitives, *ejusmŏdi, hujusmodi, istiusmodi, cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the syllable *ce* put in the middle, *ejuscemodi, hujuscemodi, &c.*

4. Of *cum*, and these ablatives, *me, te, se, nobis, vobis, qui* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* or *quocum*, and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some pronouns compounded with these syllabical adjections, *met, te, ce, pte, cine*, to make their signification more pointed and emphatical; as, *egŏmet, tute, hujusce, meapte, hiccine*.

REMARKS ON ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the nominative or foregoing state (as the English grammarians call it) we use I, thou, he, she, we, ye, they, and who; but in the other cases (which they name the following state) we use me, thee, him, her, us, you, them, and whom.

2. When we speak of a person, we use who and whom, whether we ask a question or not; as who did it? the man who did it. But if we speak of a thing, with a question, we use what; as, what book is that? Without a question, we use which; as, the book which you gave me; and then it is frequently understood; as, the book you gave me.

Note. That what is often used, even without a question, instead of the thing which or that which; as, I know what you design, i. e. The thing which, or that which, you design. As on the contrary, when it refers to some particular thing mentioned before, we make use of which even with a question; as, give me the book, which book? which of the books?

3. This makes in the plural these, and that makes those

Note. That that is frequently used instead of who, whom, or which; as, the man that told you, the man that we saw, the book that I lent you.

4. We use my, thy, her, our, your, their, when they are joined with substantives, or the word own; and mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs, when the substantive is left out or understood, as, my book, this book is mine, &c.

Digitized by Google

NOTE. That with own, or a substantive beginning with a vowel, we sometimes use mine and thine; as, my eye or mine eye; thy own, or thine own.

5. We often use here, there, where, compounded with these particles, of, by, upon, about, in, with, instead of this, that, which, and what, with these same particles; as, hereof, hereby, hereupon, hereabouts, herein, herewith; for of this, by this, upon this about this place, in this, with this, &c.

6. Whose and its are genitives, instead of, of whom, of it; and it is a fault to use it's for 'tis or it is, as some do.

CAP. III.

De Verbo.

M. QUOMODO declinatur verbum?

D. Per voces, modos, tempora, numeros, et personas.

M. Quot sunt voces?

D. Duæ; activa et passiva.

M. Quot sunt modi?

D. Quatuor; indicativus, subjunctivus, imperativus, et infinitivus.

M. Quot sunt numeri?

D. Duo; singularis et pluralis.

M. Quot sunt tempora?

D. Quinque; præsens, præteritum imperfectum, præteritum perfectum, præteritum plusquam perfectum, et futurum.

M. Quot sunt personæ?

D. Tres; prima, secunda, tertia.

CHAP. III.

Of Verb.

M. HOW is a verb declined?

S. By voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

M. How many voices are there?

S. Two; the active and passive.

M. How many moods are there?

S. Four; indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive.

M. How many numbers are there?

S. Two; singular and plural.

M. How many tenses are there?

S. Five; the present, the preter imperfect, the preter perfect, the preter pluperfect, and the future.

M. How many persons are there?

S. Three; first, second, third.

Digitized by Google

A VERB is a part of speech which signifies *to be*, *to do*, or *to suffer*. Or, a verb is that part of speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of things.

A verb may be distinguished from any other part of speech these two ways:—1. A verb being the most necessary, and essential part of a sentence, without which it cannot subsist, whatever word with a substantive noun makes full sense, or a sentence, is a verb; and that which does not make full sense with it is not a verb. 2. Whatever word, with *he*, or *it shall*, before it, makes sense, is a verb; otherwise not.

I. In most verbs there are two forms or *voices*; the *active* ending in *o*, and the *passive* in *or*. The former expresses what is done *by* the nominative or person before it; the latter what is suffered *by* or done *to* the nominative or person before it; as, *amo*, I love; *amor*, I am loved.

II. The moods are divided into *finite* and *infinite*. The first three, viz. The indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, are called *finite*, because they have certain fixed terminations answering to certain persons both singular and plural. The last is called *infinitive* or *infinite*, because it is not confined to one number or person more than another.

1. The *indicative* mood affirms or denies positively; as, *amo*, I love; *non amo*, I do not love; or else asks a question; as, *an amas?* dost thou love? *annon amas?* dost thou not love?

2. The *subjunctive* mood generally depends upon another verb in the same sentence, either going before or coming after; as, *Si me ametis, præcepta mea servate*, If you love me, keep my commandments.

[This mood is commonly branched out into three moods, viz. the *Optative*, the *Subjunctive*, more strictly taken, and the *Potential*. 1. It is called OPTATIVE, when a word importing a *wish*, as, *utinam*, would to God, *O si*, O if, goes before it. 2. It is named SUBJUNCTIVE, when it is subjoined to some other conjunction or adverb, or to interrogatives becoming indefinites (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called POTENTIAL when with the simple affirmation of the verb is also signified some modification or affection of it, such as, a *power*, *possibility*, *liberty*, *duty*, *will*, *&c.* The signs whereof, in our language, are *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, and *had* (for *would have* or *should have*; as, They had repented, *for* would have). But because the terminations of these moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the SUBJUNCTIVE, to which with small difficulty they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many moods as there are various modifications, wherewith a verb or affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater number, and so we shall have a *promissive*, *hortative*, *precative*, *concessive*, *mandative*, *interrogative* mood; nay, a *volitive* and *debitive*, which is commonly included in the *potential* As for the *optative*, it is plain that the wish is not in the verb itself, (which signifies only the matter of it, or what is wished) but in the verb *opto*, which is understood, with *ut*, *uti*, or

Digitized by Google

utinam, which really signifies no more but *that*. And it is very probable that in like manner some verb or other word, may also be understood to what is called the *potential* mood, such as, *ita est, res ita est, fieri potest ut, &c.* as Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others do contend; though, Mr. Johnson is of another opinion.]

3. The *imperative* mood commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

4. The *infinitive* mood expresses the signification of the verb in general, and is Englished by *to*; as, *amare*, to love.

III. The *tenses* are either *simple* or *compound*. The *simple tenses* are the *present*, the *preter-perfect*, and the *future*.

1. The *present*
2. The *preter-perfect*
3. The *future*

} Speaks of time now { present. past. to come.

The *compound tenses* are the *preter-imperfect*, and the *preter-pluperfect*.

4. The *preter-imperfect* refers to some past time, and imports, that the thing was present and unfinished then; as, *amabam*, I did love (viz. then).

5. The *preter-pluperfect* refers to some past time, and imports, that the thing was past at, or before that time; as, *scripseram epistolam*, I had written a letter, (i. e. before that time).

There is also a compound future tense, called the *future perfect*, or *exact*, which refers to some time yet to come, and imports that a thing as yet future shall be past and finished at, or before that time; as, *cum cœnavero, tu leges*, when I shall have supped, (i. e. after supper) you shall read. This future is only in the subjunctive mood, and the sign of it is *shall have*; as the other future, called the *future imperfect*, is only in the indicative. *Which*, when joined with another future, imports that two things yet future shall be contemporary, or exist at one time; as, *cum cœnabo, tu leges*, when I shall sup, (i. e. in time of supper) you shall read.

[And not only the tenses, but even the *Moods* themselves may be divided into *Simple* and *Compound*. I call the *indicative* a *simple* mood, because it simply affirms something of its person or nominative. But the other three moods I call *compound*, because they have some other *ideas* or *modifications* of our thoughts superadded to the simple signification of the verb; such as, a *command*, a *desire, prohibition, possibility, liberty, will, duty, wish, concession, supposition, condition, purpose, &c.* These modifications are either really included in the verb; as, a *command &c* in the *imperative*, and, according to Johnson, *power, will, duty, &c.* in the mood called *potential*; or closely interwoven with it by the help of a conjunction, adverb, or other verb expressed or understood; and because these also generally denote time, they very frequently make all the tenses of these moods to become *compound* tenses. For, with respect to their *execution*,

Digitized by Google

they are generally future; but with respect to their *modal signification*, they may fall under any of the other distinctions of time as well as the future. Thus, for instance, *lege*, read thou, with respect to its *execution*, is future, but with respect to the *command*, it is present. Again, in *legam*, I may or can read, the *action* (if done at all) must be future, but the *liberty* or *possibility* is present; and so of others.—Now, as it seems evident that from these *modifications* of the verb, more than from the bare *execution* of it, the tenses of these moods have at first been distinguished; so I am of opinion, that had grammarians taken their measures accordingly, they had not rendered this matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as Sanctius, &c. determining the times of these moods by the *execution* only, have made the whole *imperative* and *subjunctive* of the future time, and the *infinitive* and *participles* of all times, or rather of no time; others, viz. Vossius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. though they will not go so far as Sanctius, yet upon the same grounds, make *utinam legam* the future of the optative; *utinam legerem* the present of it. By the same rule, they make a *future* of the *potential* in *rim*; as, *citius crediderim*, I should, or shall sooner believe; and another of the *subjunctive* in *issem*; as, *juravit se illum statim interfecturum, nisi jusjurandum sibi dedisset*, he swore he would presently kill him, if he would not swear to him. Cic. But with all imaginable deference to these great men, I humbly think that these tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as *compound*, i. e. respecting one time as to their *execution*, and another as to their various *modifications*, superadded to or involved in their signification. To instance in the two last examples, (because they seem to have the greatest difficulty) *citius crediderim* seems to import these two things, 1st. That I have and continue to have a reason why I should not believe it; which reason is of the imperfect or past time. And 2dly. That I shall sooner have believed it, than another thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many examples where the preterite in *rim* hath the same signification with the future-perfect in *ro*; as, *si te inde exemerim*. Terent. for *exemero*. See Voss. lib. v. cap. 15. and Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. As to the other example, the composition of two times is yet more evident; for though *jusjurandum dedisset* be posterior, and consequently future with respect to *juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the time of the relation, but to *interfecturum*, to prevent which it behoved it necessarily to be past; and so of others. The same rule, in my opinion, will likewise hold in the infinitive, and participles, which, of themselves, have always one fixed time; and when they seem to be of another time, that is not in them, but in the verb that goes before them or comes after them. Thus, for instance, *scribere* is always present, or co-existent with the verb before it; and *scripsisse* is always prior to the same verb in all its tenses; as, *dicit, dixit*, or *dicet; juvat, juvit*, or *juvabit me scribere* and *me scripsisse*. So also the participles have a fixed time, past, present, or future; and when any part of the verb *sum* is joined with them, they retain their own times, and have these of that verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable occasions of speaking, wherein the nice distinctions of times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used; as I could evince by a great many examples, not only in the passive, but active voice, both in the Latin and other languages, if there were place for it. Which yet, in my judgment, does not hinder, but that every part of a verb hath formally, and of its own nature, a certain time, simple, or compound, to which it is fixed and determined.]

Digitized by Google

IV. There are two *numbers*, the *singular* and the *plural*, answering to the same numbers of a noun or pronoun.

V. There are three *persons* in each number; the *first* speaks of itself, the *second* is spoken to, and the *third* is spoken of.—The *first* hath only *ego* and *nos*, the *second* only *tu* and *vos*, and the *third* any substantive noun, singular and plural, put before the respective terminations of the verb, answering to them through all voices, moods, and tenses.

[A verb hath the same respect to its nominative that an adjective hath to its substantive; and therefore, as an adjective hath not properly either genders or numbers, but certain terminations fitted for those of its substantive, so a verb hath properly neither persons nor numbers, but certain terminations answering to the persons and numbers of its nominative.]

NOTE 1. That *ego* and *tu* are seldom expressed, because the terminations of the verb immediately discover them, without any hazard of a mistake.

NOTE 2. That if a substantive noun be joined with *ego* or *tu*, the verb is of the person of these pronouns, not of the noun.

NOTE 3. That in the continuation of a discourse, the third person is also frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these pronouns, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, idem, quis* and *qui*, do often supply the place of it.

THE ENGLISH SIGNS OF THE TENSES ARE,

Imp. Present.
- Act. the theme of the verb, and *est, eth*, or *s*; or, for the greater emphasis, *do, dost, doth*, or *does*, before it.
- Pass. *am, art, is, are, be, beest*, with a word in *ed, en, t*, &c.

Imp. Perfect.
- Act. *ed, edst*, &c. or for the greater emphasis, *did, didst*, before it.
- Pass. *was, wast, were, wert*, with a vowel in *ed, en*, &c.

Plup. Perfect.
- Act. *have, hast, hath* or *has*, with a word in *ed, en*, &c. as, in the imperfect.
- Pass. *have been, hast been, hath* or *has been*, with a word in *ed, en*, &c.

Fut.
- Act. *had, hadst*, with a word in *ed, en*, &c.
- Pass. *had been, hadst been*, with a word in *ed, en*, &c.

Fut.
- Act. *shall, will, shalt, wilt*, with a verb.
- Pass. *shall be, will be, shalt be, wilt be*, with a word in *ed, en*, &c.

The subjunctive mood active has frequently these signs:
Pres. *may* or *can*.
Imper. *might, could, would, should*.
Per. *might have, could have, would have, should have*.
Pluper. *may have* or *might have, could have, would have, should have*. Future. *shall have*.

The passive has frequently the same signs with *be* or *been*.

Digitized by Google

De Conjugationibus.

M. QUOT sunt conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; prima, secunda, tertia, et quarta.

M. Quæ sunt notæ harum conjugationum?

Of Conjugations.

M. HOW many conjugations are there?

S. Four; first, second, third, and fourth.

M. What are the marks of these conjugations?

Disc.				*Schol.*			
Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta	habet	*A* longum *E* longum *E* breve *I* longum	ante *re* Infinitivi.	First, Second, Third, Fourth	hath	*A* long *E* long *E* short *I* long	before *re* of the Infinit.

The common characteristic or *mark* by which these conjugations are distinguished from one another, is one of these three vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, before the *re* of the infinitive active, though they also may be known by the same vowels in several other parts of them; for *A* long is most frequent in the first, *E* long in the second, *E* or *I* short in the third, and *I* long in the fourth; only *E* before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus*, and *tis*, and *mur*, and *mini*, is always long in whatever congregation it is found.

But it is to be observed, that the preterites and supines, and all the parts formed from them (because of the great irregularity of their middle syllables, and constant agreement in their last vowel, and in their terminations arising from it, in all conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one conjugation more than another; for there is nothing for example in *fricui*, *docui*, *elicui*, *amicui*, or in *frictum*, *doctum*, *elicitum*, *amictum*, or in the parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their congregations.

PRIMA CONJUGATIO.

Amo.

VOX ACTIVA.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præs. Indic.	*Per.*	*Sup.*	*Præs. Infin.*
Am-o	am-āvi	am-ātum	am-āre

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

To Love.

THE ACTIVE VOICE.

The Principal Parts.

Digitized by Google

INDICATIVUS MODUS.		THE INDICATIVE MOOD.
	Præsens.	*The present.*
Sing.	1 Am-o	1 I love or do love
	2 Am-as	2 Thou lovest or dost love
	3 Am-at	3 He loveth or doth love.
Plur.	1 Am-āmus	1 We love or do love
	2 Am-atis	2 Ye (or you) love or do love
	3 Am-ant	3 They love or do love.
	Imperfectum.	*The imperfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-ābam	1 I loved or did love
	2 Am-abas	2 Thou lovedst or didst love
	3 Am-abat	3 He loved or did love.
Plur.	1 Am-abāmus	1 We loved or did love
	2 Am-abatis	2 Ye loved or did love
	3 Am-abant	3 They loved or did love.
	Perfectum.	*The perfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-āvi	1 I have loved*
	2 Am-avisti	2 Thou hast loved
	3 Am-avit	3 He hath loved.
Plur.	1 Am-avĭmus	1 We have loved
	2 Am-avistis	2 Ye have loved
	3 Am-avērunt *v.* -avēre.	3 They have loved.
	Plusquamperfectum.	*The pluperfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-avĕram	1 I had loved
	2 Am-averas	2 Thou hadst loved
	3 Am-averat	3 He had loved.
Plur.	1 Am-averāmus	1 We had loved
	2 Am-averatis	2 Ye had loved
	3 Am-averant	3 They had loved.
	Futurum.	*The future.*
Sing.	1 Am-ābo	1 I shall or will love
	2 Am-abis	2 Thou shalt or wilt love
	3 Am-abit	3 He shall or will love.
Plur.	1 Am-abĭmus	1 We shall or will love
	2 Am-abitis	2 Ye shall or will love
	3 Am-abunt	3 They shall or will love.
SUBJUNCTIVUS MODUS.		THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
	Præsens.	*The present.*
Sing.	1 Am-em	1 I may or can love
	2 Am-es	2 Thou mayst or canst love
	3 Am-et	3 He may or can love.

* Or, I loved or did love, thou lovedst or didst love, &c. in the imperfect.

Digitized by Google

Plur.	1 Am-ēmus	1 We may or can love
	2 Am-etis	2 Ye may or can love
	3 Am-ent	3 They may or can love.
	Imperfectum.	*The imperfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-ārem	1 I might, could, would, or should love
	2 Am-ares	2 Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, &c. love
	3 Am-aret	3 He might, could, would, or should love.
Plur.	1 Am-arēmus	1 We might, could, would, or should love
	2 Am-aretis	2 Ye might, could, would, or should love
	3 Am-arent	3 They might, could, would, or should love.
	Perfectum.	*The perfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-avĕrim	1 I may have loved
	2 Am-averis	2 Thou mayst have loved
	3 Am-averit	3 He may have loved.
Plur.	1 Am-averĭmus	1 We may have loved
	2 Am-averitis	2 Ye may have loved
	3 Am-averint	3 They may have loved.
	Plusquamperfectum.	*The pluperfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-avissem	1 I might, could, &c. have loved
	2 Am-avisses	2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c. have loved
	3 Am-avisset	3 He might, could, &c. have loved.
Plur.	1 Am-avissēmus	1 We might, could, &c. have loved
	2 Am-avissetis	2 Ye might, could, &c. have loved
	3 Am-avissent	3 They might, could, &c. have loved.
	Futurum.	*The future.*
Sing.	1 Am-avĕro	1 I shall have loved
	2 Am-averis	2 Thou shalt have loved
	3 Am-averit	3 He shall have loved.
Plur	1 Am-averĭmus	1 We shall have loved
	2 Am-averitis	2 Ye shall have loved
	3 Am-averint	3 They shall have loved.

IMPERATIVUS MODUS.		THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.
Sing.	2 Am-a *v.* am-āto	2 Love thou or do thou love
	3 Am-ato	3 Let him love.
Plur.	2 Am-ate *v.* am-atōte	2 Love ye or do ye love
	3 Am-anto	3 Let them love.

INFINITIVUS MODUS.		THE INFINITIVE MOOD.
Præs.	Am-āre	*Pres.* To love.
Per.	Am-avisse	*Per.* To have loved.
Fut.	Am-atūrus esse *v.* fuisse	*Fut.* To be about to love.

Digitized by Google

PARTICIPIA.	THE PARTICIPLES.
Præs. Am-ans	Of the present, *Loving.*
Fut. Am-atūrus -a -um	Of the future, *About to love.*

GERUNDIA.	THE GERUNDS.
Nom. Am-andum	*Nom.* Loving
Gen. Am-andi	*Gen.* Of loving
Dat. Am-ando	*Dat.* To loving
Acc. Am-andum	*Acc.* Loving
Abl. Am-ando.	*Abl.* From, in, or by loving.

SUPINA.	THE SUPINES.
Prius. Am-atum	First. *To love.*
Posterius. Am-atu	Last. *To love*, or *to be loved.*

VOX PASSIVA. THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Am-or am-atus am-ari.

INDICATIVUS MODUS.		THE INDICATIVE MOOD.
	Præsens.	*The present.*
Sing.	1 Am-or	1 I am loved
	2 Am-āris *v.* -are	2 Thou art loved
	3 Am-atur	3 He is loved.
Plur.	1 Am-amur	1 We are loved
	2 Am-amĭni	2 Ye are loved
	3 Am-antur	3 They are loved.
	Imperfectum.	*The imperfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-ābar	1 I was loved
	2 Am-abāris *v.* abare	2 Thou wast (wert) loved
	3 Am-abatur	3 He was loved.
Plur.	1 Am-abamur	1 We were loved
	2 Am-abamĭni	2 Ye were loved
	3 Am-abantur	3 They were loved.
	Perfectum.	*The perfect.*
Sing. Am-ātus	1 sum *v.* fui	1 I have been loved
	2 es *v.* fuisti	2 Thou hast been loved
	3 est *v.* fuit	3 He hath been loved.
Plur. Am-ati	1 sumus *v.* fuimus	1 We have been loved
	2 estis *v.* fuistis	2 Ye have been loved
	3 sunt, fuērunt *v.* fuere	3 They have been loved.

Digitized by Google

	Plusquamperfectum.	*The pluperfect.*
Sing. Am-atus	1 eram *v.* fueram	1 I had been loved
	2 eras *v.* fueras	2 Thou hadst been loved
	3 erat *v.* fuerat	3 He had been loved.
Plur. Am-ati	1 eramus *v.* fueramus	1 We had been loved
	2 eratis *v.* fueratis	2 Ye had been loved
	3 erant *v.* fuerant	3 They had been loved.

	Futurum.	*The future.*
Sing.	1 Am-ābor	1 I shall or will be loved
	2 Am-abĕris *v.* -abere	2 Thou shalt or wilt be loved
	3 Am-abĭtur	3 He shall or will be loved.
Plur.	1 Am-abimur	1 We shall or will be loved
	2 Am-abimini	2 Ye shall or will be loved
	3 Am-abuntur	3 They shall or will be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVUS MODUS. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	Præsens.	*The present.*
Sing.	1 Am-er	1 I may or can be loved
	2 Am-ēris *v.* -ere	2 Thou mayst or canst be loved
	3 Am-etur	3 He may or can be loved.
Plur.	1 Am-ēmur	1 We may or can be loved
	2 Am-emini	3 Ye may or can be loved
	3 Am-entur	3 They may or can be loved.

	Imperfectum.	*The imperfect.*
Sing.	1 Am-ārer	1 I might, could, &c. be loved
	2 Am-arēris *v.* -arēre	2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c. be loved
	3 Am-aretur	3 He might, could, &c. be loved.
Plur.	1 Am-aremur	1 We might, could, &c. be loved
	2 Am-aremini	2 Ye might, could, &c. be loved
	3 Am-arentur	3 They might, could, &c. be loved.

	Perfectum.	*The perfect.*
S. Am-atus	1 sim *v.* fuĕrim	1 I may have been loved
	2 sis *v.* fueris	2 Thou mayst have been loved
	3 sit *v.* fuerit	3 He may have been loved.
P. Am-ati	1 simus *v.* fuerĭmus	1 We may have been loved
	2 sitis *v.* fueritis	2 Ye may have been loved
	3 sint *v.* fuerint	3 They may have been loved.

Digitized by Google

	Plusquamperfectum.	*The pluperfect.*	
S. Am-atus	1 essem *v.* fuissem	1 I might, &c. have	been loved.
	2 esses *v.* fuisses	2 Thou mighst, &c. have	
	3 esset *v.* fuisset	3 He might, &c. have	
P. Am-ati	1 essemus *v.* fuissemus	1 We might, &c. have	
	2 essetis *v.* fuissetis	2 Ye might, &c. have	
	3 essent *v.* fuissent	3 They might, &c. have	

	Futurum.	*The future.*
Sing. Am-atus	1 fuĕro	1 I shall have been loved
	2 fueris	2 Thou shalt have been loved
	3 fuerit	3 He shall have been loved.
Plur. Am-ati	1 fuerĭmus	1 We shall have been loved
	2 fueritis	2 Ye shall have been loved
	3 fuerint	3 They shall have been loved.

IMPERATIVUS MODUS.		THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.
	Præsens.	*The present.*
Sing. 2	Am-āre *v.* -ātor	2 Be thou loved
3	Am-ator	3 Let him be loved.
Plur. 2	Am-amini	2 Be ye loved
3	Am-antor	3 Let them be loved.

INFINITIVUS MODUS.		THE INFINITIVE MOOD.
Præs.	Am-āri	To be loved.
Per.	Am-ātus esse *v.* fuisse	To have or had been loved.
Fut.	Am-atum iri	To be about to be loved.

PARTICIPIA.				THE PARTICIPLES.
Perfecti temporis.	Am-atus	-a	-um	*Of the perfect.* Loved.
Futuri.	Am-andus	-a	-um	*Of the fut.* To be loved.

SECUNDA CONJUGATIO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Doc-eo doc-ui doct-um doc-ēre.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pr.	Doc-eo	-es	-et	-ēmus	-ētis	-ent.
Im.	Doc-ēbam	-ēbas	-ēbat	-ebāmus	-ebatis	-ebant.

Digitized by Google

Per. Doc-ui	-uisti	-uit	-uimus	-uistis	-uērunt *v.* -uēre.
Plu. Doc-uĕram	-ueras	-uerat	-ueramus	-uerātis	-uerant.
Fut. Doc-ēbo	-ebis	-ebit	-ebĭmus	-ebitis	-ebunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-eam	-eas	-eat	-eāmus	-eatis	-eant.
Im. Doc-ērem	-eres	-eret	-erēmus	-eretis	-erent.
Per. Doc-uĕrim	-ueris	-uerit	-uerĭmus	-ueritis	-uerint.
Plu. Doc-uissem	-uisses	-uisset	-uissēmus	-uissetis	-uissent.
Fut. Doc-uĕro	-ueris	-uerit	-uerĭmus	-ueritis	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Doc-	-e / -ēto	-eto	-ete / -etōte	-ento.

INFINITIVUS.	SUPINA.	PARTICIPIA.	GERUNDIA.
Præs. Doc-ēre.	1 Doctum.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum.
Per. Doc-uisse.	2 Doctu.	*Fu.* Doc-tūrus.	Doc-endi.
Fut. Doc-tūrus esse *v.* fuisse.			Doc-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Doc-eor doct-us doc-ēri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
Pr. Doc-eor	-ēris / -ere	-etur	-emur	-emĭni	-entur.
Im. Doc-ēbar	-ebāris / -ebare	-ebatur	-ebamur	-ebamĭni	-ebantur.
Fu. Doc-ēbor	-ebĕris / -ebere	-ebĭtur	-ebĭmur	-ebimini	-ebuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-ear	-eāris / -eare	-eātur	-eamur	-eamini	-eantur.
Im. Doc-ērer	-erēris / -erere	-eretur	-eremur	-eremini	-erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Doc-	-ēre / -etor	-etor	-emini	-entor.

INFINITIVUS.	PARTICIPIA.
Præs. Doc-ēri.	*Per.* Doct-us -a -um.
Per. Doct-us esse *v.* fuisse. Doct-um iri.	*Fut.* Doct-endus -a -um.

Digitized by Google

TERTIA CONJUGATIO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Leg-o leg-i lect-um leg-ere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Præs.	Leg-o	-is	-it	-ĭmus	-itis	-unt.
Imp.	Leg-ēbam	-ebas	-ebat	-ebāmus	-ebatis	-ebant.
Per	Leg-i	-isti	-it	-ĭmus	-istis	-ērunt *v.* ere.
Plus.	Leg-ĕram	-eras	-erat	-erāmus	-eratis	-erant.
Fut.	Leg-am	-es	-et	-ēmus	-etis	-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs.	Legam	-as	-at	-āmus	-atis	-ant.
Imp.	Leg-ĕrem	-eres	-eret	-erēmus	-eretis	-erent.
Per.	Leg-ĕrim	-eris	-erit	-erĭmus	-eritis	-erint.
Plus.	Leg-issem	-isses	-isset	-issēmus	-issetis	-issent.
Fut.	Leg-ĕro	-eris	-erit	-erĭmus	-eritis	-erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Leg- {-e / -ĭto} -ito {-ite / -itōte} -unto.

INFINITIVUS.	SUPINA.	PARTICIPIA.	GERUNDIA.
Præs. Leg-ĕre.	1 Lect-um.	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.
Per. Leg-isse.	2 Lect-u.	*Fu.* Lect-urus.	Leg-endi.
Fut. Lect-urus esse *v.* fuisse.			Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Leg-or lect-us leg-i.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Præs.	Leg-or	{-ĕris / -ere}	-ĭtur	-imur	-imini	-untur.
Imp.	Leg-ēbar	{-ebāris / -ebare}	-ebatur	-ebamur	-ebamini	-ebantur.
Fut.	Leg-ar	{-ēris / -ere}	-etur	-emur	-emini	-entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs.	Leg-ar	{-āris / -are}	-atur	-amur	-amini	-antur.
Imp.	Leg-ĕrer	{-erēris / -erere}	-eretur	-eremur	-eremini	-erentur.

Digitized by Google

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Leg-	-ĕre / -ĭtor	-ĭtor	-imĭni	-untor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Leg-i.
Per. Lect-us esse *v.* fuisse.
Fut. Lect-um iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Per. Lect-us	-a	-um.
Fut. Leg-endus	-a	-um.

QUARTA CONJUGATIO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Aud-io aud-īvi aud-ītum aud-īre.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pr.	Aud-io	-is	-it	-īmus	-ītis	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iēbam	-iebas	-iebat	-iebāmus	-iebatis	-iebant.
Pe.	Aud-īvi	-ivisti	-ivit	-ivĭmus	-ivistis	-ivērunt / *v.* ivere.
Pl.	Audivĕram	-iveras	-iverat	-iverāmus	-iveratis	-iverant.
Fu.	Aud-iam	-ies	-iet	-iēmus	-ietis	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iam	-ias	-iat	-iāmus	-iatis	-iant.
Im.	Aud-īrem	-ires	-iret	-irēmus	-iretis	-irent.
Pe.	Aud-ivĕrim	-iveris	-iverit	-iverĭmus	-iveritis	-iverint.
Pl.	Aud-ivissem	-ivisses	-ivisset	-ivissemus	-ivissetis	-ivissent.
Fu.	Aud-ivĕro	-iveris	-iverit	-iverimus	-iveritis	-iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Aud-	-i / -īto	-ito	-ite / -itote	-iunto.

INFINITIVUS.	SUPINA.	PARTICIPIA.	GERUNDIA.
Pr. Aud-īre.	1 Aud-ītum.	*Pr.* Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.
Pe. Aud-ivisse.	2 Aud-itu.	*Fu.* Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.
Fu. Aud-itūrus esse *v.* fuisse.			Aud-iendo.

Digitized by Google

VOX PASSIVA.

Aud-ior aud-ītus aud-īri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr. Aud-ior	-īris / -ire	-itur	-imur	-imini	-iuntur.
Im. Aud-iēbar	-iebāris / -iebare	-iebatur	-iebāmur	-iebamini	-iebantur.
Fu. Aud-iar	-iēris / -iere	-ietur	-iemur	-iemini	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud-iar	-iāris / -iare	-iatur	-iamur	-iamini	-iantur.
Im. Aud-irer	-irēris / -irere	-iretur	-iremur	-iremini	-irentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. Aud-	-īre / -itor	-itor	-imini	-iuntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Aud-īri.
Pe. Aud-ītus esse *v.* fuisse.
Fu. Aud-itum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Pe. Aud-ītus -a -um.
Fu. Aud-iendus -a -um.

NOTE. That in the examples of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, we have omitted such parts of the passive voice as are supplied by the participle perfect with the verb *sum*, viz. the perfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and the perfect, pluperfect, and future, of the subjunctive, as being the same in all conjugations with the example of the first, the change of the participle only excepted: But it is carefully to be observed, that the participle being an adjective, must agree in gender, number, and case, with its substantive, or (which is the same thing) with the *person* before it.

I. *REMARKS shewing when a LATIN VERB is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing examples.*

1. WHEN the continuation of a thing is signified, the English verb may be varied in all its tenses by the participle in *ing* with the verb *am*; as,

Pr. I am reading	for	I read.
Im. I was reading		I did read.
Pe. I have been reading		I have read.
Pl. I had been reading		I had read.
Fu. I shall be reading		I shall read.

Digitized by Google

So, also in the passive voice, the house is building, *domus ædificatur*; the lesson was prescribing, *lectio præscribebatur*. Sometimes *a* is set before the participle; as, while the house is a-building; it is a-doing; he is a-dying.

2. When a question is asked, the nominative case or person is set after the verb, or the sign of the verb; as, love I? do I love? can I love? should he be loved?

3. We have made *thou* the second person singular, to distinguish it from the plural: But it is customary with us, (as also with the French and others) though we speak but to one particular person, to use the plural *you*, and never *thou*, but when we address ourselves to Almighty God, or otherwise when we signify familiarity, disdain, or contempt.

4. The perfect of the indicative is often Englished as the imperfect; as, *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved (or did love) this man.—See a train of examples in Ovid, Metamorph. lib. I. from v. 21 to 39.

5. The *perfect* tense is frequently Englished by *had* after *antequam*, *postquam*, *ubi* or *ut* for *postquam*; as, *postquam superavimus isthmum*, after we had (were) passed over the isthmus. Ov. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, when he had spoken these words. Liv. *Ut me salutavit, statim Romam profectus est*, after he had saluted me, &c. Cic.

6. We have chosen, *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *&c.* for the English of the *subjunctive* mood, because these are the most frequent signs of it, and distinguish it best from other moods; but very often it is the same with the *indicative*, save only that it hath some *conjunction* or *indefinite* word before it; such as, *if*, *seeing*, *lest*, *that*, *although*, *I wish*, *&c.* as, *si amem*, if I love; *ne amem*, lest I love; *causa est cur amem*, it is the cause why I love. Ov. And frequently it hath both; as, *oro ut ames*, I intreat that you may love. Ov.

7. The *present* of the *subjunctive* after *quasi*, *tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes Englished as the *imperfect*; as, *quasi intelligant qualis sit*, as if they understood what kind of person he is. Cic.

8. When a question is asked, the *present* of the *subjunctive* is frequently Englished by *shall* or *should*; as, *eloquar an sileam?* shall I speak or be silent? Virg. *Singula quid referam?* why should I mention every thing? Ov. Likewise after *non est quod? Non est* (supply *causa*) *quod eas*, there is no reason why you should go, or you need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by *would*; as, *in facinus jurâsse putes*, you would think they had sworn to (commit) wickedness. Ov.

9. We have Englished the *perfect* of the *subjunctive* in *rim* by *may have*; as, *ne frustra tales viri venerint*, that such men as

Digitized by Google

these may not have come in vain. Cic. *Forsitan audiêris*, you may perhaps have heard of it; to distinguish it from the *present* and *pluperfect*, by the signs of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *ut sic dixerim*, that I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* where should I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas strages ediderit?* could one man make so great a slaughter? Virg. *Fortasse errārim*, perhaps I might be in an error. Plin. *Oratores quos viderim peritissimi*, the ablest orators I have seen (or could see). Quintil.

10. This *perfect* in *rim* sometimes inclines very much to a future signification, and then it is Englished by *should*, *would*, *could*, *can*, *will*, *shall*; as, *citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe. Juv. *Libenter audiêrim*, I would gladly hear. Cic. *Ciceronem cuicunque eorum, facile opposuerim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them. Quintil. *Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell. Cic. *Nec tamen excluserim alios*, and yet I will not exclude others. Plin. *Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego periêrim*, if you but trip in the least, I shall be undone. Ter. But all those ways of speaking, though indeed they respect the future as to the execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it to a time when their futurity shall be past; and so come near in signification to the *future* in *ro*.

11. The *perfect* of the *subjunctive* after *quasi tanquam*, and the like, may sometimes be Englished by *had*; as, *quasi affuerim*, as if I had been present. Plaut. *Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, as if they had already overcome. Cic.

12. The *pluperfect* in *issem* is sometimes Englished by *should*; as, *imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperavisset, se esse facturos*, he might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded (should command), they would do. Cic. *Fœdus ictum est, his legibus, ut cujus populi cives eo certamine vicissent is alteri imperaret*, an agreement was made on these terms, that that people, whose countrymen should be victorious in that combat, should have the sovereignty over the other. Liv. And this happens when a thing is signified as future at a certain past time referred to; and commonly takes place, when what was formerly said directly is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *ne dubita, dabitur quodcunque optāris*, doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt choose, shall be given thee. Ov. *Sol Phaethonti facturum se esse dixit, quicquid optâsset*, the Sun told Phaethon that he would do whatsoever he should choose. Cic. Where it is worth noticing, that, what was the *future* of the *subjunctive* in the direct speech, becomes the *pluperfect* in the indirect recital of it. See Turner's Exercises, *p.* 21, &c. But as we have said, *p.* 30, the *pluperfect*, notwithstanding its coming in the place of a *future*, still retains its own

Digitized by Google

proper compound time, that is, it was prior to a thing now past at the time of the recital by Cicero, though it was future when first spoken by the *Sun*. And therefore there is no reason for making this termination *issem* a *future* tense, as Mr. Turner does.

13. Though the proper English of the *future* in *ro* be *shall have*, yet generally the *have* or the *shall*, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit*, he who shall cut off Anthony shall put an end to the war. Cic. *Haud desinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this. Ter. *Si negaverit*, If he denies it. Cic. Sometimes it is Englished by *will*; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis*, somebody will perhaps say. Cic. *Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re, juvero*, I will assist you either by comforting you, or with council or with money. Cic. But though we thus render the *future* in *ro* in our language, and though (which is more material) very frequently it and the future of the indicative are used promiscuously, yet I cannot be persuaded that in any instance the formal significations of these are the same, as Mr. Johnson contends, *p.* 339, but still think with the great Vossius, that the future in *ro* is always a future perfect, that is, that there is a time insinuated when a thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a future of the indicative is joined with it, which in order of time should be done before it; as, *pergratum mihi feceris, si disputabis*, you shall have done (shall do) me a great favour, if you shall dispute. Cic. For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finishing of an action yet future, without formally considering the finishing of another action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous usage of tenses, one for another, be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all tenses, and overthrow the very arguments Mr. Johnson makes use of against Sanctius, with respect to the tenses of the infinitive.

14. The *to* of the *infinitive* is generally omitted after *may, can, might, would, could*, (which are sometimes verbs themselves, and not the bare signs of them); also after *must, bid, dare, let, help*, and *make*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the *infinitive* is, that when it hath an accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the indicative mood, the participle *that* being sometimes put before it, but oftener understood. And it is carefully to be remarked, that the same tenses of the infinitive are differently Englished, according as the verb varies in its tenses; as will appear in the following scheme:

Digitized by Google

Dicit me scribere,	He says (that) I write.
Dixit me scribere,	He said (that) I was writing.
Dicet me scribere,	He shall say (that) I am writing.
Dicit me scripsisse,	He says (that) I wrote or did write.
Dixit me scripsisse,	He said (that) I had written.
Dicet me scripsisse,	He shall say (that) I have written, or did write.
Dicit me scripturum (esse),	He says (that) I will write.
Dixit me scripturum (esse),	He said (that) I would write.
Dicet me scripturum (esse),	He shall say (that) I will write.
Dicit me scripturum (fuisse),	He says (that) I would have written.
Dixit me scripturum (fuisse),	He said (that) I would have written.
Dicet me scripturum (fuisse),	He shall say (that) I would have written.

It will be of great use to accustom the learner to render the infinitive after this manner, both in English and Latin, especially after he has been taught something of construction; and then to cause him to vary the accusative *me*, into *te*, *se*, *illum*, *hominem*, *fœminam*, &c. and these again into the plural, *nos*, *vos*, *se*, *illos*, *homines*, *fœminas*, &c. But he must be careful to make the participles agree with them in gender, number, and case.

NOTE 1. That when the preceding verb is of the *present* or *future* tense, the *future* of the *infinitive* with *esse*, it is rendered by *shall* or *will*; and when it is of the *perfect* tense, the *future* of the *infinitive* is rendered by *would*, as in the examples above; and sometimes by *should*; as, *dixit te sciturum esse*, he said that you should know.

NOTE 2. That when the preceding verb is of the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* tenses, the English of the *infinitive* is the same as when it is of the *perfect*.

16. The perfect of the indicative and subjunctive passive, made up with *sum* or *sim*, are Englished by *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, instead of *have been*, when the thing is signified to be just now past; as, *vulneratus sum*, I am wounded; *opus finitum est*, the work is finished; *cum tempora mutata sint*, since the times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Englished by *was*, *wast*, *were*, *wert*; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken; as is also what is called the pluperfect, with *eram* and *essem*; as, *labor finitus erat*, the labour was finished; *si labor finitus esset*, if the labour were finished.

Digitized by Google

II. REMARKS ON THE LATIN CONJUGATIONS.

1. A GREAT part of the passive voice, and some of the active is made up of two of its own participles, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, (of which you have the full conjugation, *p.* 62) after this manner :

The Participle Perfect with	*Sum* or *fui*	makes the	Perf. Plu.	Indicat.	Passive.
	eram or *fueram*				
	sim or *fuerim*		Perf. Plu.	Subjunct.	
	essem or *fuissem*				
	fuero		Fut.		
	esse or *fuisse*		Perf.	Infinit.	
The Participle Fut. Act. with	*esse* or *fuisse*		Fut.	Infinit.	Active.

2. Having, *p.* 40, laid it down as a probable opinion, that every part of a verb, with all its participles, have a certain fixed time simple or compound, which they formally and of their own nature signify, it will perhaps be here expected that I should account for that great variety that is found in the passive voice. To put this matter in the clearest light I am able, I must premise another division of the tenses, viz. into *passing* and *past ;* or into such as import the continuance of an action or thing, without regard to the ending or finishing of it ; and such as import that the thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first sort are the present, imperfect, and future-imperfect ; of the second sort are the present, imperfect, and future-perfect. See page 29. From this division of the tenses, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy method of distinguishing all the parts of the passive. Thus, for instance, let the subject of discourse be the building of a house.

1. When I say *domus ædificatur*, I mean that it is just now a-building, but not finished. 2. When *ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past time, a-building, but not then finished. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that some time hence it shall be a-building, without any formal regard to the finishing of it. But when I make use of the participle-perfect, I always signify a thing completed and ended ; but with these subdistinctions :—1. *Ædificata est ;* I mean simply, that it is finished, without any regard to the time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit ;* it is finished, and some time since has intervened. 3. *Ædificata erat ;* it was finished at a certain past time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Ædi-*

Digitized by Google

ficata fuerat; it was finished before a certain past time referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit;* it shall be finished sometime hereafter, either without regard to a particular time when, or with respect to a certain time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *ædificata fuerit;* it shall be finished and past before another thing yet future, to which its finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different times, or complications of times, without confounding them with one another. But then, how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, that this proceeds from one or more of these four reasons: 1. Because it very frequently happens in discourse that we have no occasion particularly to consider these various relations and complications of times; and it is the same thing to our purpose whether the thing is or was done, or a-doing; or whether it was done just now, or some time ago; or whether another thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior to it; and the matter being thus, we reckon ourselves at liberty to take several parts of the verb at random, as being secured not only of being understood, but also that, in these circumstances, whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state ourselves as present with, and as it were, eye-witnesses of the things we relate, though really they were transacted long before; whence it is that we frequently use the present instead of some time past. 3. It is to be remarked, that there are some verbs, the action whereof is in some sense finished when begun; in which case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the passing or past tenses. And 4. The present tense (which strictly speaking, is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger acceptation, and sometimes used for the future, when we signify that the execution is very near, or (according to Perizonius) when, together with the action, we take in also the preparation to it. The brevity we are confined to, will not allow us to illustrate these things with examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous usage of the tenses, in both voices; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an abuse of the language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the poets, ought not to be made a common standard. I shall only add for a proof, that these tenses are not always to be used indifferently, that when we signify a thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *fui* or *fuerim* or *fuisse*, but *sum*, *sim*, and *esse*.

3. Whether the learner should be obliged to get by heart those parts of the passive that are supplied by *sum*, or if

Digitized by Google

should be referred to construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I refer to the discretion of the master.

4. Besides those parts which are thus made up, all the other parts may be resolved into its own participles and the verb *sum*, though their significations are not precisely the same; as,

Amo	amabam	amavi	amaveram	amabo.
Sum amans	eram amans	fui amans	fueram amans	ero amans *or* sum amaturus.
Amor	amabar	amabor	amer	amarer.
Sum amatus	eram amatus	ero amatus	amatus sim	amatus essem.

5. The participle in *rus* with the verb *sum* is frequently used instead of the future of the indicative, especially if *purpose* or *intention* is signified; as, *profecturus sum* or *proficiscar*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *sim* and *essem*, instead of the future-imperfect, or pluperfect of the subjunctive; as, *non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubitavi quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined *ero* with *fuero* for the future of the subjunctive, because we thought it incongruous to couple words of different moods; though it must be owned that it comes nearer in signification to the future of the subjunctive, than that of the indicative; as Ov. *Qui cum victus erit*, is much the same as *victus fuerit;* and so those ancient lawyers, Scævola, Brutus, and Manilius, understand the words of the Attinian law, *quod subreptum erit, ejus rei æterna auctoritas esto.* But that a preterite time is there insinuated, is owing, not to the word *erit*, but to the preterite participle with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See Aulus Gellius, lib. xvii. cap. 7.

7. We have omitted the termination *minor* in the second person plural of the imperative, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary standard, (as the common Rudiments do) which is to be found only once or twice in Plautus, Epid. 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor.* And Pseud. 2. 2. *Pariter progrediminor.*

8. For the same reason we have excluded the ancient termination *asso*, in the future-subjunctive of the first conjugation; as, *excantasso*, in the laws of the twelve tables, *levasso* in Ennius; *abjurasso, invitasso, cœnasso, irritasso, servasso, &c.* in Plautus, for *excantavero, levavero, &c.* to which may be added *esso* of the second conjugation; as, *licessit*, Plaut. *Prohibessit*, Cic. for *licuerit, prohibuerit.* To these some add *jusso* for *jussero*, in that of Virg. Æn. 11. v. 467.

Cætera, quæ jusso, mecum manus inferat arma,

Digitized by Google

But though I was once of that opinion, yét now I incline with Vossius to think that it is only a *syncope;* but not for the reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other examples in *sso* change *r* into *ss*, as *levaro, levasso;* but because I believe these old futures were formed not from the common futures in *ero*, as he supposes, but from the second person singular of the present of the indic. by adding *so;* as, *levas, levasso; prohibes, prohibesso:* According to which rule *jubeo* must have formed *jubesso* not *jusso.*

9. Upon the same account we have omitted the future of the infinitive in *assere* formed from *asso;* as, *impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere*, in Plautus; for *impetraturum esse, &c.*

10. Though we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse* vel *fuisse, &c.* in the nominative, as, *dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the accusative *amaturum* and *amatum*, as most common, reserving the distinction between these to construction.* [See page 85.]

11. The future of the infinitive passive is made up of the first supine and *iri* the infinitive passive of *eo:* And therefore it is not varied in numbers and genders, as the parts made up of the participle with *sum.*

12. But the supine with *ire* is not the future of the infinitive active as some teach; for such phrases as these, *amatum ire, doctum ire*, are rather of the present than future tense.

13. The participle in *dus* with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the future of the infinitive passive, as is commonly believed: For it does not so much import futurity, as necessity, duty, or merit. For there is a great difference between these two sentences, *dicit literas a se scriptum iri*, and *dicit literas a se scribendas esse;* the first signifying, that a letter will be written by him; or that he will write a letter; and the second, that a letter must be written by him, or he is obliged to write a letter. For though Sanctius, and Messieurs de Port Royal contend that this participle is sometimes used for simple futurity, yet I think Perizonius and Johnson have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, that the imperative mood wants the first person both singular and plural, because no man can or needs command or exhort himself: Or, if he does, he must jostle himself out of the first into the second person, as in that of Catullus, speaking to himself, *at tu, Catulle, destinatus obdura*, but do you, Catullus, continue obstinate.

---

* The nominative has been adopted in this edition.

Digitized by Google

15. The present of the subjunctive is most frequently used instead of the imperative, especially in forbidding, after *ne*, *nemo*, *nullus*, &c. as, *valeas*, farewell; for *vale*. *Ne facias*, do it not, rather than *ne fac*. And sometimes the future of the subjunctive; as, *tu videris*, see you to it. *Ne dixeris*, Dont say that. And sometimes also the future of the indicative; as, *non occides*, thou shalt not kill; for *ne occide*, or *occidito*. *Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis*. Cic. i. e. *sed vale meaque negotia vide. Referes ergo hæc, et nuncius ibis Pelidæ genitori*. Virg. i. e. *refer, et ito*. But it is to be remarked that none of these are proper imperatives; for to the first is understood, *oro*, *rogo*, *peto*, or the like with *ut*; as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *ne* expressed; and the third is only a command by consequence, because of the authority, influence, or power of the speaker. For which reason, and to keep the moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the imperative: Though the common rudiments take in the first, and Alvarus the second and third. However, it is observable that we shew most civility and respect when we use the subjunctive, and most authority by the future of the indicative, and *nto* of the imperative; which last is the ordinary strain in which laws are delivered. But this rule is not always followed.

16. The *ris* of the second person passive is more usual than *re*; and *erunt* of the perfect of the indicative active than *ere*; especially in prose, in which, if a vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. REMARKS UPON ENGLISH VERBS.

1. AN English verb hath only two tenses, distinguished by different terminations, and both in the active voice, viz. the present and preterite. The present is the verb itself, and the preterite is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d* when it ends in *e*; as, *fill*, *filled*; *love*, *loved*.

2. All the other parts of the active, and the whole passive is made up of the auxiliary verbs, *do*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, and *am*; as in page 41, and in the example, *to love*, page 42, &c.

3. An English verb hath different terminations for the persons of the singular number. The present hath three or four. The first person is the verb itself; the second ends in *est* or *st*; the

Digitized by Google

third in *eth*, *es*, or *s*. The preterite hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *edst* or *dst*: But the third person singular of the preterite, and all the persons plural, both of it and the present, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted as in the Latin.

4. We have two participles, the present ending always in *ing*, and the preterite ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en*, and *t*.

5. There are a great many irregular English verbs; but it is to be noted, 1. That that irregularity relates only to the termination of the preterite tense, and the passive participle. 2. That it reaches only such words as are native and originally English. 3. That it is to be found only in words of one syllable, or derived from words of one syllable. 4. That where the preterite is regular, the passive participle is the same with it. Except *hewed*, *mowed*, *showed*, *snowed*, *sowed*; which have *hewn*, *mown*, *shown*, *snown*, *sown*.

6. These irregularities may be reduced to the following heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c*, *ch*, *sh*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *x*; and after *s* and *th* when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, when a short vowel goes before it; as plac't, snatch't, fish't, walk't, dwelt, smelt. But when a long vowel goes before *t*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as, kept, slept, wept, crept, swept, leapt, from keep, sleep, weep, creep, sweep, leap; as also sometimes before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *v*, turned into *f*; as, feel, felt; dream, dreamt; mean, meant; leave, left.

(2.) When the present ends in *d* or *t*, the preterite is sometimes the same with it; as, read, cast, hurt, burst, hit, quit; and when two vowels precede, the last is left out; as, spread, spred; lead, led; feed, fed; bleed, bled; meet, met. When a consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, bend, bent; lend, lent; send, sent; rend, rent; gird, girt.

(3.) Most of the other irregular verbs may be comprehended under the following lists:

Digitized by Google

I. Such as have their preterite and participle passive the same.

Awake	awoke	Find	found	Pay	paid	Sting	stung
Abide	abode	Flee	fled	Say	said	Swing	swung
Beseech	besought	Fling	flung	Seek	sought	Swim	swum
Bind	bound	Grind	ground	Sell	sold	Teach	taught
Bring	brought	Gild	gilt	Sit	sat	Tell	told
Buy	bought	Hang	hung	Shine	shone	Think	thought
Catch	caught	Hear	heard	Spin	spun	Work	wrought
Dig	dug	Lay	laid	Spring	sprung	Win	won
Drink	drunk	Lose	lost	Stand	stood	Wind	wound
Fight	fought	Make	made	Stick	stuck	Wring	wrung.

II. Such as have the preterite and participle passive different.

Bear	bore	born	Freeze	froze	frozen	Shrink	shrank	shrunk
Begin	began	begun	Get	got	gotten	Sink	sank	sunk
Bid	bade	bidden	Give	gave	given	Slay	slew	slain
Beat	beat	beaten	Go	went	gone	Slide	slid	slidden
Bite	bit	bitten	Grow	grew	grown	Smite	smote	smitten
Blow	blew	blown	Hew	hewed	hewn	Strike	struck	stricken
Chide	chid	chidden	Hide	hid	hidden	Speak	spoke	spoken
Choose	chose	chosen	Hold	held	holden	Spit	spat	spitten
Cleave	clove	cleft	Know	knew	known	Strive	strove	striven
Come	came	come	Ly	lay	lain	Swear	swore	sworn
Crow	crew	crowed	Ride	rode	ridden	Swell	swelled	swoln
Dare	durst	dared	Ring	rang	rung	Take	took	taken
Do	did	done	Rise	rose	risen	Tear	tore	torn
Draw	drew	drawn	Run	ran	run	Thrive	throve	thriven
Drive	drove	driven	See	saw	seen	Throw	threw	thrown
Eat	ate	eaten	Seethe	sod	sodden	Tread	trode	trodden
Fall	fell	fallen	Shake	shook	shaken	Wear	wore	worn
Fly	flew	flown	Shear	shore	shorn	Weave	wove	woven
Forsake	forsook	forsaken	Shoot	shot	shotten	Write	wrote	written.

These preterites, bare, share, sware, tare, ware, clave, gat, begat, forgat, brake, spake, slang, sprang, swang, wan, stank, sank, are seldom used. But beseech'd, catch'd, work'd, digg'd, gilded, girded, hang'd, swam, writ, for besought, caught, &c. are frequently to be met with.

NOTE 1. That when the verb ends in one consonant, that consonant is for the most part doubled before *ing*, *ed*, *est*, *edst*, and *eth*; as, *worship*, *worshipping*, *worshipped*, *worshippest*, *worshippedst*, *worshippeth*; As also before *en*; as, *bid*, *bidden*.

NOTE 2. That the *apostrophus*, (which was become too common in English verbs; as, *lov'd*, *lov'st*, for *loved*, *lovest*,) begins now to be disused by the most polite writers in prose; but poets still use it, though not so much as formerly.

NOTE 3. That the preterite active and the participle passive (when one word serves for both) are thus distinguished: When it hath nothing before it but the nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the preterite active; but when it hath any part of the helping verb *am*, it is the participle passive.

Digitized by Google

Except *come, gone, run, set, risen, fallen, grown, withered,* and such like intransitive verbs, which have frequently the passive signs, *am, art, &c.* instead of *have* in the perfect tense; and *was, wast, &c.* instead of *had,* in the pluperfect; as, *veni,* I am come; *veneram,* I was come.

Note 4. That though the Latin perfect frequently answers both to *have* and *did,* (or the preterite termination *ed, &c.*) yet they seem to be thus distinguished; *did* or *ed, &c.* respects a certain past time, in which the thing was finished, or a-finishing; as, *I wrote,* or *did write yesterday; have* either speaks of a thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular time that it happened at; as, *I have written my letter,* i. e. just now; *I have read of* Julius Cæsar, i. e. some time or other. The first of these is called the preterperfect definite, and the other the preterperfect indefinite.

Note 5. That *shall* and *will,* by Mr. Brightland, are thus distinguished:

In the first person simply *shall* foretells;
In *will* a threat, or else a promise dwells.
Shall in the second and the third does threat;
Will simply then foretells the future feat.

By Mr. Turner thus:

Will imports the will or purpose of the person it is joined with; *shall* implies the will of another, who promises or threatens to do the thing, or cause it to be done, permits it, or commands it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum.

QUATUOR sunt terminationes verbi, a quibus reliquæ omnes formantur; viz. *o* præsentis, *i* præteriti, *um* supini, et *re* infinitivi, hoc modo:

1. Ab *o* formantur *am* et *em.*

2. Ab *i* formantur *ram, rim, ro, sse,* et *ssem.*

3. Ab *um* formantur *u, us,* et *rus.*

4. A *re* formantur reliquæ omnes; nempe, *bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.*

Of the Formation of Verbs.

THERE are four terminations of a verb, from which all the rest are formed? namely *o* of the present, *i* of the preterite, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive, after this manner:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em.*

2. From *i, ram, rim, ro, sse,* and *ssem.*

3. *U, us,* and *rus* are formed from *um.*

4. All other sorts from *re* do come; as, *bam, bo, rem, a, e,* and *i, ns,* and *dus, dum, do,* and *di.*

In every complete verb there are commonly four principal parts, viz. the present of the indicative in *o,* the preterite or perfect in *i,* the first supine in *um,* and the present of the infini-

Digitized by Google

tive in *re*. The first (which is therefore called the theme or root of the verb) gives origin to the whole verb, either mediately or immediately. The preterite, the first supine, and the present of the infinitive, come from it immediately, and all the rest from them; except the future of the indicative in *am*, and the present of the subjunctive in *em* or *am*, which by this scheme are also formed immediately from the present in *o*.

It is to be noted, that the preterites and supines of the first conjugation end commonly in *avi* and *atum*, of the second in *ui* and *itum*, and of the fourth in *ivi* and *itum*. But the third conjugation cannot be reduced to any general rule, and there are a great many exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily practice, till the scholar is advanced to that part of grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the present of the infinitive, and all the other parts of the verb, are regularly formed after one fixed and uniform manner.

In the foregoing rules of formation, I have for the ease of the memory, put the terminations instead of the moods and tenses; but for the greater plainness they may be thus expressed:

I. From the present of the indicative are formed the future of the indicative of the third and fourth conjugations in *am*, and the present of the subjunctive of the first in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the perfect of the indicative are formed the pluperfect of it, the perfect, pluperfect, and future of the subjunctive, and the perfect of the infinitive.

III. From the first supine are formed the last supine, the participle perfect, and the future active.

IV. From the present of the infinitive are formed the imperfect of the indicative, the future of the same when it ends in *bo*, (viz. in the first and second conjugations) the imperfect of the subjunctive, the imperative, the participles present and future passive, and the gerunds.

NOTE 1. That verbs in *io* of the third conjugation retain *i* before *unt*, *unto*, *ebam*, *am*, *ens*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the present of the infinitive, and imperfect of the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. That the last person plural of the imperative may be formed by adding *o* to the same person of the present of the indicative; as, *amant*, *amanto*; *docent*, *docento*.

NOTE 3. That the passive voice is formed from the same tenses of the active, (except where *sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE 4. That the present of the infinitive passive of the third conjugation may be formed by taking *e* from the second person of the present of the indicative active; as, *legis*, *legi*; or, when the verb is deponent, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as, *proficiscor*, *proficisci*; *morior*, *mori*.

Digitized by Google

NOTE 5. That the present of the infinitive active, and the second person of the indicative and imperative passive in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE 6. That the second person plural of the present of the indicative, and of the imperative, are the same in the passive voice.

NOTE 7. That where any of the principal parts are wanting, those parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which reason grammarians give supines to a great many verbs, which yet are not to be found in any author, because the participles formed from them are found: And they suppose, likewise, all deponent words of old to have had the active voice, and consequently supines, though now lost.

NOTE 8. That all verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and all verbs of the fourth in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are eight verbs in *eo*, of the first conjugation, viz. *beo, creo, screo, meo, calceo, laqueo, nauseo, nucleo.* There are twenty-four in *io* of the first, viz. *amplio, basio, brevio, concilio, crucio, furio, glacio, hio, lanio, luxurio, macio, nuncio, pio, propitio, radio, repudio, satio, saucio, socio, somnio, spolio, suavio*, or rather *suavior, vario, vitio*; with some others less common; as, *decurio, succenturio, fascio, retalio, strio, tertio, &c.* and twelve of the third, viz. *capio, facio, jacio, lacio, specio, fodio, fugio, cupio, rapio, sapio, pario, quatio*, with their compounds.

It is not, in my opinion, necessary to trouble the learner with a particular account how the respective changes in the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons, are made; they being obvious from the examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the body, or essential part of the verb by a division or hyphen. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular rule, might be a sufficient direction. For to conjugate one verb by the example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the essential part of the one (which is all that stands before *o, eo*, or *io* of the present of the indicative) to substitute the essential part of the other, and then to add to it, the additional syllables it receives in conjugation as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the preterites and supines, and the parts that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um* for the body of the verb, adding the usual syllables to it, as in the active voice of *lego*. 2. In verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in note 1.

There is yet another way of the formation of verbs, differing only from the first method in this, that what parts, according to it, are formed from the infinitive, are by this formed from the first or second person of the present of the indicative. But though this may be the more natural way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De Verbis irregularibus.

IRREGULARIA verba vulgo recensentur octo, viz. sum, eo, queo, volo, nolo, malo, fero, et fio, cum compositis.

Of irregular Verbs.

THE irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight, viz. sum, eo, queo, volo, nolo, malo, fero, and fio, with their compounds.

Digitized by Google

SUM.

Sum, fui, esse, *To be.*

INDICATIVUS MODUS.		SUBJUNCTIVUS MODUS.	
		Præsens.	
Sum	I am	Sim	I may or can be
Es	Thou art	Sis	Thou mayst or canst be
Est	He is.	Sit	He may or can be.
Sumus	We are	Simus	We may or can be
Estis	Ye are	Sitis	Ye may or can be
Sunt	They are.	Sint	They may or can be.
		Imperfectum.	
Eram	I was	Essem	I might, &c. be
Eras	Thou wast	Esses	Thou mightst, &c. be
Erat	He was.	Esset	He might, &c. be.
Eramus	We were	Essēmus	We might, &c. be
Eratis	Ye were	Essetis	Ye might, &c. be
Erant	They were.	Essent	They might, &c. be.
		Perfectum.	
Fui	I have been	Fuĕrim	I may have been
Fuisti	Thou hast been	Fueris	Thou mayst have been
Fuit	He hath been.	Fuerit	He may have been.
Fuimus	We have been	Fuerĭmus	We may have been
Fuistis	Ye have been	Fueritis	Ye may have been
Fuērunt *v.* fuēre	They have been.	Fuerint	They may have been.
		Plusquamperfectum.	
Fuĕram	I had been	Fuissem	I might have been
Fueras	Thou hadst been	Fuisses	Thou mightst have been
Fuerat	He had been.	Fuisset	He might have been.
Fuerāmus	We had been	Fuissēmus	We might have been
Fueratis	Ye had been	Fuissētis	Ye might have been
Fuerant	They had been.	Fuissent	They might have been.
		Futurum.	
Ero	I shall or will be	Fuero	I shall have been
Eris	Thou shalt or wilt be	Fueris	Thou shalt have been
Erit	He shall or will be.	Fuerit	He shall have been.
Erĭmus	We shall or will be	Fuerĭmus	We shall have been
Eritis	Ye shall or will be	Fueritis	Ye shall have been
Erunt	They shall or will be.	Fuerint	They shall have been.

Digitized by Google

IMPERATIVUS MODUS.

Præsens.	Es *v.* esto	Be thou
	Esto	Let him be.
	Este *v.* estōte	Be ye
	Sunto	Let them be.

INFINITIVUS MODUS.

Præs.	Esse	To be.
Per.	Fuisse	To have been.
Fut.	Futurus esse *v.* fuisse	To be about to be.

PARTICIPIUM.

Fut.	Futurus	About to be.

The compounds of sum, are, adsum, absum, desum, intersum, præsum, obsum, subsum, supersum, insum, prosum, and possum. The first eight are conjugated as the simple sum; insum wants the preterite and its descendants; for we do not use infui, infuisti, infueram, &c.

¶ PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where sum begins with *e*; as,

IND. *Pr.* Pro-sum prod-es prod-est; pro-sumus prod-estis pro-sunt.
Im. Prod-ĕram prod-eras prod-erat; prod-erāmus, &c.
SUB. *Im.* Prod-essem prod-esses prod-esset; prod-essemus, &c.
IMPER. Prod-esto; prod-este. INFIN. *Pr.* Prod-esse.

Possum should be pot-sum, (as being compounded of potis, able, and sum) but for the better sound *t* is changed into *s* before another *s*, and retained before any other letter; and for the same reason *s* is always taken away. Possem and posse are contracted for potessem, potesse, which are yet to be found in some old authors; thus,

¶ Possum, potui, posse, *To be able.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr.	Possum	potes	potest;	possumus	potestis	possunt.
Im.	Poteram	poteras	poterat;	poteramus	poteratis	poterant.
Pe.	Potui	potuisti	potuit;	potuimus	potuistis	potuerunt *v.* -uēre.
Pl.	Potueram	potueras	potuerat;	potueramus	potueratis	potuerant.
Fu.	Potero	poteris	poterit;	poterimus	poteritis	poterunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Possim	possis	possit;	possimus	possitis	possint.
Im.	Possem	posses	posset;	possemus	possetis	possent.
Pe.	Potuerim	potueris	potuerit;	potuerimus	potueritis	potuerint.
Pl.	Potuissem	potuisses	potuisset;	potuissemus	potuissetis	potuissent.
Fu.	Potuero	potueris	potuerit;	potuerimus	potueritis	potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Posse. *Pe.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

EO.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs.	Eo	is	it	imus	itis	eunt
Imp.	Ibam	ibas	ibat	ibamus	ibatis	ibant.

Digitized by Google

Per. Ivi	ivisti	ivit	ivimus	ivistis	iverunt	*v.* ivere.
Plu. Iveram	iveras	iverat	iveramus	iveratis	iverant.	
Fut. Ibo	ibis	ibit	ibimus	ibitis	ibunt.	

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Eam	eas	eat	eamus	eatis	eant.
Im. Irem	ires	iret	iremus	iretis	irent.
Pe. Iverim	iveris	iverit	iverimus	iveritis	iverint.
Pl. Ivissem	ivisses	ivisset	ivissemus	ivissetis	ivissent.
Fu. Ivero	iveris	iverit	iverimus	iveritis	iverint.

IMPERATIVUS MODUS.

Pr. {i / ito} ito — {ite / itote} eunto.

INFINITIVUS MODUS.

Pr. Ire.
Pe. Ivisse.
Fu. Iturus esse *v.* fuisse.

PARTICIPIA.	SUPINA.	GERUNDIA.
Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.	1 Itum.	Eundum.
Fu. Iturus -a -um.	2 Itu.	Eundi.
		Eundo.

NOTE 1. That in general *eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE 2. That of old, verbs of the fourth had their imperfect in *ibam* and future in *ibo*, of which there are many examples in Plautus and Terence, and some in Virgil and Horace.

After the same manner the compounds of *eo* are conjugated, viz. Adeo abeo, exeo, obeo, redeo, subeo, pereo, coëo, ineo, præeo, anteëo, prodeo, prætereo, transeo: Adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adeundum, &c. But ambio is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE. That in the compounds, ivi, ivisti, &c. are seldom used, but they are contracted into ii, iisti, &c. as, adii, adiisti, and sometimes adisti:—So adieram, adierim, &c.

Queo, I can, and nequeo, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; they only want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are scarcely in use.

VOLO.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will*, or *be willing*.

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Volo	vis	vult	volumus	vultis	volunt.
Im. Vol-ebam	-ebas	-ebat	-ebamus	-ebatis	-ebant.
Pe. Vol-ui	-uisti	-uit	-uimus	-uistis	-uerunt *v.* -uere.
Pl. Vol-ueram	-ueras	-uerat	-ueramus	-ueratis	-uerant.
Fu. Volam	voles	volet	volemus	voletis	volent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Velim	velis	velit	velīmus	velitis	velint.
Vellem	velles	vellet	vellēmus	velletis	vellent.

Digitized by Google

Pe. Vol-uerim	-ueris	-uerit	-uerimus	-ueritis	-uerint.
Pl. Vol-uissem	-uisses	-uisset	-uissemus	-uissetis	-uissent.
Fu. Vol-uero	-ueris	-uerit	-uerimus	-ueritis	-uerint.

INFINITIVUS.	PARTICIPIUM.
Præs. Velle. *Per.* Voluisse.	*Præs.* Volens.

The rest wanting.

NOLO.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Nolo	nonvis	nonvult	nolumus	nonvultis	nolunt.
Im. Nol-ebam	-ebas	-ebat	-ebamus	-ebatis	-ebant.
Pe. Nol-ui	-uisti	-uit	-uimus	-uistis	-uerunt *v.* -uere.
Pl. Nol-ueram	-ueras	-uerat	-ueramus	-ueratis	-uerant.
Fu. Nolam	noles	nolet	nolemus	noletis	nolent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Nolim	nolis	nolit	nolimus	nolitis	nolint.
Im. Nollem	nolles	nollet	nollemus	nolletis	nollent.
Pe. Nol-uerim	-ueris	-uerit	-uerimus	-ueritis	-uerint.
Pl. Nol-uissem	-uisses	-uisset	-uissemus	-uissetis	-uissent.
Fu. Nol-uero	-ueris	-uerit	-uerimus	-ueritis	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.		INFINITIVUS.	PARTICIPIUM.
Pr. Noli / Nolīto	nolite / nolitōte.	*Pr.* Nolle. *Pe.* Noluisse.	*Pr.* Nolens.

The rest wanting.

MALO.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Malo	mavis	mavult	malumus	mavultis	malunt.
Im. Mal-ebam	-ebas	-ebat	-ebamus	-ebatis	-ebant.
Pe. Mal-ui	-uisti	-uit	-uimus	-uistis	-uerunt *v.* -uere.
Pl. Mal-ueram	-ueras	-uerat	-ueramus	-ueratis	-uerant.
Fu. Malam	males	malet, &c.	*This is scarcely in use.*		

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Malim	malis	malit	malimus	malitis	malint.
Im. Mallem	malles	mallet	mallemus	malletis	mallent.
Pe. Mal-uerim	-ueris	-uerit	-uerimus	-ueritis	-uerint.

Digitized by Google

Pl. Mal-uissem	-uisses	-uisset	-uissemus	-uissetis	-uissent.
Fu. Mal-uero	-ueris	-uerit	-uerimus	-ueritis	-uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Malle *Per.* Maluisse.

NOTE. That volo, nolo, and malo, retain something of the third conjugation, for vis, vult, vultis, are contracted of volis, volit, volitis; and *o* is changed into *u*, for of old they said volt, voltis.

Nolo is compounded of non-volo, and malo of magis-volo.

FERO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Fero, tuli, latum, *To bring*, or *suffer*.

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Fero	fers	fert	ferimus	fertis	ferunt.
Im. Ferebam	ferebas	ferebat	ferebamus	ferebatis	ferebant.
Pe. Tuli	tulisti	tulit	tulimus	tulistis	tulerunt *v.* -ere.
Pl. Tuleram	tuleras	tulerat	tuleramus	tuleratis	tulerant.
Fu. Feram	feres	feret	feremus	feretis	ferent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Feram	feras	ferat	feramus	feratis	ferant.
Im. Ferrem	ferres	ferret	ferremus	ferretis	ferrent.
Pe. Tulerim	tuleris	tulerit	tulerimus	tuleritis	tulerint.
Pl. Tulissem	tulisses	tulisset	tulissemus	tulissetis	tulissent.
Fu. Tulero	tuleris	tulerit	tulerimus	tuleritis	tulerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. Fer / Ferto ferto — ferte / fertote ferunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.
Pe. Tulisse.
Fu. Laturus esse *v.* fuisse.

PARTICIPIA.	SUPINA.	GERUNDIA.
Pr. Ferens.	1 Latum.	Ferendum.
Fu. Laturus -a -um.	2 Latu.	Ferendi.
		Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror latus ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Feror — ferris / ferre fertur — ferimur ferimini feruntur.

Digitized by Google

Im. Fer-ebar { -ebaris / -ebare } -ebatur -ebamur -ebamini -ebantur.
Pe. Latus sum *v.* fui, latus es *v.* fuisti, &c.
Pl. Latus eram *v.* fueram, latus eras *v.* fueras, &c.
Fu. Ferar { fereris / ferere } feretur feremur feremini ferentur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Ferar { feraris / ferare } feratur feramur feramini ferantur.
Im. Ferrer { ferreris / ferrere } ferretur ferremur ferremini ferrentur.
Pe. Latus sim *v.* fuerim, latus sis *v.* fueris, &c.
Pl. Latus essem *v.* fuissem, latus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.
Fu. Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. { Ferre / Fertor } fertor ferimini feruntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferri.
Pe. Latus esse *v.* fuisse.
Fu. Latum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Pe. Latus -a -um.
Fu. Ferendus -a -um.

NOTE. That fero, is a verb of the third conjugation; fers, fert, fertis, ferto, ferte, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor, being contracted of feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur, and feritor.

Also fer is contracted of fere; which in like manner has happened to the imperatives of dico, duco, facio, they having dic, duc, fac, instead of dice, duce, face.

The compounds of fero, are conjugated the same way as the simple; as, affero, attuli, allatum; aufero, abstuli, ablatum; differo, distuli, dilatum; confero, contuli, collatum; infero, intuli, illatum; offero, obtuli, oblatum; effero, extuli, elatum: So circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, præfero.

FIO.

Fio, factus, fiĕri, *To be made*, or *to become.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Fio fis fit fimus fitis fiunt.
Im. Fiebam fiebas fiebat fiebamus fiebatis fiebant.
Pe. Factus sum *v.* fui, factus es *v.* fuisti, &c.
Pl. Factus eram *v.* fueram, factus eras *v.* fueras, &c.
Fu. Fiam fies fiet fiemus fietis fient.

Digitized by Google

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Fiam	fias	fiat	fiamus	fiatis	fiant.
Im.	Fierem	fieres	fieret	fieremus	fieretis	fierent.

Pe. Factus sim *v.* fuerim, factus sis *v.* fueris, &c.
Pl. Factus essem *v.* fuissem, factus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.
Fu. Factus fuero, factus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. { Fi* / Fito } fito { fite / fitote } fiunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Fieri.
Pe. Factus esse *v.* fuisse.
Fu. Factum iri.

PARTICIPIA.			SUPINUM.
Pe. Factus	-a	-um.	Factu.
Fu. Faciendus	-a	-um.	

Note 1. That fio is the passive of facio, to make, (which is regular) instead of facior, which is not in use: Yet the compounds of facio, which change *a* into *i* are regular; as, afficior, affectus, affici; perficior, perfectus, perfici.

Note 2. That the compounds of facio, with verbs, nouns, or adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their imperative active, fac, and their passive form, (when used) fio; as, calefacio, lucrifacio, benefacio; calefac, calefio, &c. But those compounded with a preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have fice and ficior. There are some compounded of facio and a noun, where facio is changed into fico of the first conjugation; as, magnifico, significo.

To the irregular verbs may be reduced edo, to eat; which in some of its parts falls in with the verb sum; thus,

IND. *Pr.*	Edo	es	est;	———	estis	———
SUB. *Im.*	Essem	esses	esset;	essemus	essetis	essent.
IMP.	Es *v.* esto;			este *v.* estote.		
INFIN.	Esse.					

Likewise its compounds, comedo, comes, comest, &c. and exedo, exes, exest, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, edo, edis, edit, &c. Ederem, ederes, ederet, &c.

OF DEFECTIVE VERBS.

THOUGH some of the irregular verbs already mentioned want some of their parts, and upon that account may be called also defective verbs, yet by defective verbs here we chiefly un-

---

* Though *fi* is rejected by some grammarians of great note, yet we have given it a place here, not only because it is to be found in Plautus, but also in Horace, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. ver. 38. Fi cognitor ipse, according to the best manuscripts and editions.

Digitized by Google

derstand such as want considerable branches, or are used only in few tenses and persons. We shall set down those that most frequently occur.

I. Aio, I say; inquam, I say; forem, I should be; ausim, I dare; faxim, I will see to it, or I will do it; ave and salve, God save you, Hail, Good-morrow; cedo, tell, or give me; quæso, I pray.

IND. *Pr.*	Aio	ais	ait			aiunt.
Im.	Ai-ebam	-ebas	-ebat	-ebamus	-ebatis	-ebant.
Pe.		aisti				
SUB. *Pr.*		aias	aiat		aiatis	aiant.

IMPERAT. Ai. PARTICIP. *Pr.* Aiens.

IND. *Pr.*	Inquam	inquis	inquit	inquimus	inquitis	inquiunt.
Im.			inquiebat			inquiebant.
Pe.		inquisti				
Fu.		inquies	inquiet			

IMPERAT. Inq-ue -ĭto. PARTICIP. *Pr.* Inquiens.

SUB. *Im.* *Pl* Forem fores foret foremus foretis forent.

INF. F e, to be, or to be about to be, the same with futurus esse.

SUB. *Pr.*	Ausim	ausis	ausit			
Pe.	Faxim	faxis	faxit			faxint.
Fu.	Faxo	faxis	faxit		faxĭtis	faxint.

NOTE. That faxim and faxo are used instead of fecerim and fecero.

IMPERAT. Ave, Avēto, Salve, Salvēto, Cedo — avēte, avetōte, salvēte, salvetōte, cedite

INFIN. avēre, salvēre

IND. *Pr.* Quæso quæsŭmus.

II. These three verbs, odi, memini, cœpi, have only the preterite tense, and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called preteritive verbs.

Odi	oderam	oderim	odissem	odero	odisse.
Memĭni	memineram	meminerim	meminissem	meminero	meminisse.
Cœpi	cœperam	cœperim	cœpissem	cœpero	cœpisse.

But under these they comprehend also the signification of the other tenses; as, memini, I remember, or I have remembered; memineram, I remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So odi, I hate, or I have hated; cœpi, I begin, or I have begun. Though I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any example where cœpi doth clearly signify the present tense.

Digitized by Google

Memini hath also the imperative memento, remember thou; mementote, remember ye. Some add meminens, remembering, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add novi, because it frequently hath the signification of the present, I know, as well as I have known; though it comes from nosco, which is complete.

NOTE 1. That odientes is to be found in Petronius; odiatur in Seneca; cœpio in Plautus and Terence. See Voss. Analog. Lib. iii. cap. 9.

NOTE 2. That the participles cœptus, and osus, with its compounds perosus, exosus, are in use among the best authors; but perodi and exodi are not.

III. Faris, to speak, wants the first person of the present indicative, and perhaps the whole present of the subjunctive, for we do not say for or fer, and rarely feris, fetur, &c. So likewise daris and deris, but not dor or der, to be given. The compouds of the first, as, effor, affor, are rare; but the compounds of the other, as, addor, reddor, are common.

IV. Most of the other defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found but among poets; as, infit, he begins; defit, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb with the conjunction si; as, sis for si vis, if thou wilt; sultis, for si vultis, if ye will; sodes, for si audes, if thou darest.

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

THESE are also a kind of defective verbs, which for the most part are used only in the third person singular. They have the sign *it* before them in English; as, pœnitet, it repents; placet, it pleases; and are thus conjugated:

	Præs.	*Imper.*	*Per.*	*Plusq.*	*Fut.*
IND.	Pœnitet	pœnitebat	pœnituit	pœnituerat	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat	pœniteret	pœnituerit	pœnituisset	pœnituerit.
INF.	Pœnitere		pœnituisse.		

Most verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially such as otherwise have no passive; as,

	Præs.	*Imp.*	*Perf.*		*Plusq.*		*Fut.*
IND.	Pugnatur	pugnabatur	pugnatum	est / fuit	-atum	erat / fuerat	pugnabitur.
SUB.	Pugnetur	pugnaretur	pugnatum	sit / fuerit	-atum	esset / fuisset	-atum fuerit.
INF.	Pugnari		pugnatum	esse / fuisse			pugnatum iri.

NOTE 1. That impersonals are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals in

Digitized by Google

the cases which they govern; as, pœnitet me, te, illum, I repent, thou repentest, he repenteth, instead of ego pœniteo, &c. which is scarcely Latin. Placet mihi, tibi, illi, it pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. Pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

Note 2. That impersonals are not used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive.

Note 3. That impersonal verbs are very often used personally, especially in the plural number; as, accidit, contingit, evenit, pertinet, decet, dolet, licet, nocet, patet, placet, præstat, &c. For we say, tu mihi sola places; nulli noceo; multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt; parvum parva decent, &c. But it is to be remarked, that they are generally impersonal, when an infinitive or subjunctive mood follows; for though I can say, tu places mihi, yet I cannot say, si places audire, but si placet tibi audire. Again, we cannot say, ego contigi esse domi, but, me contigit esse domi, or, mihi contigit esse domi. Likewise, evenit illum mori, or ut ille moreretur, but not ille evenit mori.

[I shall not here enquire what is the word understood to impersonal verbs, whether it is a noun of the like signification; as, pugna pugnatur, or the word res or negotium, or the infinitive mood. Though I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the first, to others the second, and to others the third, may be most fitly understood, as the nature of the verb and good sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the word understood can never be a person properly so called, but a thing; for which reason, and the want of two primary persons, viz. the first and second, they are called impersonal, though some are much offended with the name.]

CAP. IV.

De Participio.

TRIA sunt præcipue consideranda in participio, viz. *tempus*, *significatio*, et *declinatio*.

I. Tempora participiorum sunt tria, *præsens*, *præteritum*, et *futurum*.

Particip. { *Pr.* / *Pe.* / *Fu.* } Temp. desinunt in { *ns.* / *tus, sus, xus.* / *rus, dus.* }

II. Significatio participiorum est vel activa vel passiva, vel

CHAP. IV.

Of Participle.

THERE are three things especially to be considered in a participle, viz. *time*, *signification*, and *declension*.

I. The tenses of participles are three, the *present*, *preterite*, and *future*.

Particip. of the { *Pr.* / *Pe.* / *Fu.* } Tens. end in { *ns.* / *tus, sus, xus.* / *rus, dus.* }

II. The signification of participles is either active or pas-

Digitized by Google

neutra, ad modum verborum a quibus descendunt.	sive, or neuter, after the manner of the verbs from which they come.
Participia: in *ns*, et *rus* plerumque sunt activa. in *dus* semper passiva. in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, plerumque sunt passiva, interdum vero activa, vel etiam communia.	Participles: in *ns*, and *rus* are generally active. in *dus* always passive. in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, are generally passive, sometimes active, or also common.
III. Omnia participia sunt adjectiva: quæ desinunt in *ns* sunt tertiæ declinationis, reliqua autem omnia primæ et secundæ.	III. All participles are adjectives: those which end in *ns* are of the third declension, but all the rest are of the first and second.

A participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification always imports some time.

It is so called because it partakes of a noun and a verb, having genders and cases from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

1. Active verbs [See chap. ix.] have two participles, one of the present time ending in *ns*; as, *amans*, loving; and another of the future ending in *rus*; as, *amaturus*, about to love.

2. Passive verbs have likewise two participles, one of the preterite ending in *tus*, *sus*, or *xus*; as, *amatus*, loved; *visus*, seen; *flexus*, bowed; (to which some add one in *uus*, viz. *mortuus*, dead,) and another of the future ending in *dus*; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

3. Neuter verbs have two participles, as the active; as, *sedens*, sitting; *sessurus*, about to sit.

4. Active intransitive verbs have frequently three participles; as, *carens*, wanting; *cariturus*, about to want; *carendus* to be wanted; *dolens*, grieving; *doliturus*, about to grieve; *dolendus*, to be grieved: And sometimes four; as, *vigilans*, watching; *vigilaturus*, about to watch; *vigilatus*, watched; *vigilandus*, to be watched.

5. Deponent and common verbs have generally four participles; as, *loquens*, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken; *dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed.

Digitized by Google

NOTE 1. That in some deponent verbs the participle perfect hath both an active and passive signification, though that of the verb itself is only active; as, *testatus*, having testified, or being testified. So *mentitus*, *meditatus*, *oblitus*, &c.

NOTE 2. That it is essential to a participle, 1. That it come immediately from a verb. 2. That in its signification it also include time. Therefore, *tunicatus*, coated; *larvatus*, masked; and such like, are not participles, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs. And *ignarus*, ignorant; *elegans*, neat; *circumspectus*, circumspect; *tacitus*, silent; *falsus*, false; *profusus*, prodigal, &c. are not participles, because they do not signify time.

There are a kind of adjective-nouns ending in *undus*, which approach very near to the nature of participles, such as, *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*. They are formed from the imperfect of the indicative, and the signification is much the same with the participle of the present time; only they signify abundance (or a great deal) of the action, according to A. Gellius, Lib. 11. Cap. 15. or according to others, they signify the same with the participles of frequentative verbs, when these are not in use. See Gronovius on Gellius, as above cited.

APPENDIX OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS and supines (which because of their near relation to verbs, are by some not improperly called *participial words*) are a sort of substantive-nouns, expressing the action of the verb in general, or in the abstract. Gerunds are substantives of the second declension, and complete in all their cases, except the vocative. Supines are substantives of the fourth declension, having only two cases, the accusative in *um*, which makes the first supine, and the ablative in *u*, which makes the second.

[Vossius, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. thinks that the last supine may sometimes be a dative; as, *durum tactu*, i. e. *tactui*; for the datives of the fourth declension of old ended in *u*. Also Lib. 7. Cap. 8. he takes notice, that though these supines have sometimes other cases, (as *irrisui esse*) yet they are only reckoned supines by grammarians when the first come after verbs of motion, and the second after adjective-nouns; thus *dignus irrisu* is a supine (according to them), *non sine irrisu audientium* is not.]

Digitized by Google

De Indeclinalibus Partibus Orationis.

CAP. V.

De Adverbio.

IN adverbio potissimum spectanda est ejus significatio.

Adverbiorum significationes variæ sunt: earum vero præcipuæ ad sequentia capita revocari possunt.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

CHAP. V.

Of Adverb.

IN an adverb is chiefly to be considered its signification.

The significations of adverbs are various: but the chief of them may be reduced to the following heads.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, which being joined to a noun, verb, or another adverb, expresses some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

I. Adverbs denoting circumstance are chiefly those of place, time, and order.

Digitized by Google

1. Adverbs of PLACE are five-fold, viz. Adverbs signifying motion,

(1) *in a place.* (or rest)

UBI?	Where?
Hic	Here.
Illic	There.
Isthic	
Ibi	
Intus	Within.
Foris	Without.
Ubique	Every where.
Nusquam	No where.
Alicubi	Some where.
Alibi	Else where.
Ubivis	Any where.
Ibidem	In the same place.

(2) *to a place:*

QUO?	Whither?
Huc	Hither.
Illuc	Thither.
Isthuc	
Intro	To within.
Foras	To without.
Eo	To that place.
Alio	To another place.
Aliquo	To some place.
Eodem	To the same place.

(3) *towards a place.*

QUORSUM?	Whitherward?
Versus	Towards.
Horsum	Hitherward.
Illorsum	Thitherward.
Sursum	Upward.
Deorsum	Downward.
Antrorsum	Forward.
Retrorsum	Backward.
Dextrorsum	To the right hand.
Sinistrorsum	To the left hand.

(4) *from a place.*

UNDE?	From whence?
Hinc	From hence.
Illinc	From thence.
Isthinc	
Inde	
Aliunde	From else where.
Alicunde	From some place.
Sicunde	If from any place.
Utrinque	On both sides.
Superne	From above.
Inferne	From below.
Cœlitus	From heaven.
Funditus	From the ground.

(5) *through or by a place.*

QUA?	Which way?
Hac	This way.
Illac	That way.
Isthac	
Alia	Another way.

2. Adverbs of TIME are three-fold, viz. such as signify,

(1.) *Being in time either*

1 *present.*

NUNC	Now.
Hodie	To day.

2 *past.*

TUNC	Then.
Tum	
Heri	Yesterday.
Dudum	Heretofore.
Pridem	
Pridie	The day before.
Nudius tertius	Three days ago.
Nuper	Lately.

3 *future, very near.*

JAMJAM	Presently.
Mox	Immediately.
Statim	By and by.
Protinus	Instantly.
Illico	Straightway.

3 *future, remote;*

Cras	Tomorrow.
Postridie	The day after.
Perendie	Two days hence.
Nondum	Not yet.

4 *indefinite.*

QUANDO?	When?
Aliquando	Sometimes.
Nonnunquam	
Interdum	
Semper	Ever.
Nunquam	Never.
Interim	In the mean time.
Quotidie	Daily.

(2) *Continuance of time.*

QUAMDIU?	How long?
Diu	Long.
Tamdiu	So long.
Jamdiu	Long ago.
Jamdudum	
Jampridem	

(3) *Vicissitude* or *repetition of time.*

1 *indefinite.*

QUOTIES?	How often?
Sæpe	Often.
Raro	Seldom.
Toties	So often.
Aliquoties	For several times.
Vicissim	By turns.
Alternatim	
Rursus	Again.
Iterum	
Subinde	Ever and anon.
Identidem	

2 *definite or in number.*

SEMEL	Once.
Bis	Twice.
Ter	Thrice.
Quater	Four times, &c.

Digitized by Google

3. Adverbs of ORDER; as,

Inde	Then.	Deinceps	So forth.	Primo -um	First.
Deinde	Thereafter.	Denuo	Of-new.	Secundo -um	Secondly.
Dehinc	Henceforth.	Denique	Finally.	Tertio -um	Thirdly.
Porro	Moreover.	Postremo	Lastly.	Quarto -um	Fourthly.

II. The other adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either absolute or comparative.

ABSOLUTE, *denoting*,

1. Quality simply; as, bene, *well;* male, *ill;* fortiter, *bravely:* and innumerable others that come from adjective-nouns, or participles.
2. Certainty; as, profecto, certe, sane, plane, næ, utique, ita, etiam, *truly, verily, yes;* quidni, *why not?* omnino, *certainly.*
3. Contingence; as, forte, forsan, fortassis, fors, *happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.*
4. Negation; as, non, haud, *not;* nequaquam, *not at all;* neutiquam, *by no means;* minime, *nothing less.*
5. Prohibition; as, ne, *not.*
6. Swearing; as, hercle, pol, edepol, mecastor, *by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.*
7. Explaining; as, utpote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, *to wit, namely.*
8. Separation; as, seorsum, *apart;* separatim, *separately;* sigillatim, *one by one;* viritim, *man by man;* oppidatim, *town by town, &c.*
9. Joining together; as, simul, unà, pariter, *together;* generaliter, *generally;* universaliter, *universally;* plerumque, *for the most part.*
10. Indication or pointing out; as, en, ecce, *lo, behold.*
11. Interrogation; as, cur, quare, quamobrem, *why, wherefore?* num, an, *whether?* quomodo, qui, *how?* to which add, ubi, quo, quorsum, unde, qua, quando, quamdiu, quoties?

COMPARATIVE, *denoting*,

1. Excess; as, valde, maxime, magnopere, summopere, admodum, oppido, perquam, longe, *very much, exceedingly;* nimis, nimium, *too much;* prorsus, penitus, omnino, *altogether, wholly;* magis, *more;* melius, *better;* pejus, *worse;* fortius, *more bravely;* and optime, *best;* pessime, *worst;* fortissime, *most bravely;* and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.
2. Defect; as, ferme, fere, prope, propemodum, pene, *almost;* parum, *little;* paulo, paululum, *very little.*
3. Preference; as, potius, satius, *rather;* potissimum, præcipue, præsertim, *chiefly, especially;* imo, *yes, nay, nay rather.*
4. Likeness or equality; as, ita, sic, adeo, *so;* ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, *as, as if;* quemadmodum, *even as;* satis, *enough;* itidem, *in like manner.*
5. Unlikeness or inequality; as, aliter, secus, *otherwise;* alioqui, or alioquin, *else;* nedum, *much more* or *much less.*
6. Abatement; as, sensim, paulatim, pedetentim, *by degrees, piecemeal;* vix, *scarcely;* ægre, *hardly, with difficulty.*
7. Exclusion; as, tantum, solum, modo, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, *only.*

Digitized by Google

NOTE 1. That adverbs seem originally to have been contrived to express compendiously in one word what must otherwise have required two or more; as, sapienter, *wisely;* for cum sapientia; hic, for in hoc loco; semper, for in omni tempore; semel, for una vice; bis, for duabus vicibus; Hercule, for Hercules me juvet, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else but adjective-nouns or pronouns, having the preposition and substantive understood; as, quo, eo, eodem; for ad quæ, ea, eadem [loca] or cui, ei, eidem [loco]; for of old these datives ended in *o*. Thus, qua, hac, illac, &c. are plain adjectives in the ablative singular, fem. the word via, a *way*, and in being understood. Many of them are compounds; as, quomodo, i. e. quo modo; quemadmodum, i. e. ad quem modum; quamobrem, i. e. ob quam rem; quare, i. e. [pro] qua re; quorsum, i. e. versus quem [locum]; scilicet, i. e. scire licet; videlicet, i. e. videre licet; ilicet, i. e. ire licet; illico, i. e. in loco; magnopere, i. e. magno opere; nimirum, i. e. ni [est] mirum, &c.

NOTE 2. That of adverbs of place, those of the first kind answer to the question ubi? the second to quo? the third to quorsum? the fourth to unde? and the fifth to qua? to which might be added a sixth, quousque? *how far?* answered by usque, *until;* hucusque, *hitherto;* eousque, *so far;* hactenus, *hitherto, thus far;* eatenus, *so far as;* quadantenus, *in some measure.* But these are equally applied to time and place.

NOTE 3. That adverbs of time of the first kind answer to quando? of the second to quamdiu, and quamdudum or quampridem? of the third to quoties?

NOTE 4. That adverbs of quality generally answer to the question quomodo?

NOTE 5. That some adverbs of time, place, and order are frequently used the one for the other; as, ubi, *where*, and *when;* inde, *from that place, from that time, thereafter, next;* hactenus, *thus far*, with respect to place, time, or order, &c. Other adverbs also may be classed under different heads.

NOTE 6. That some adverbs of time are either past, present, or future; as, jam, *already, now, by and by;* olim, *long ago, some time hereafter.*

NOTE 7. That interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or with the adjection *cunque* answer to the English adjection *soever;* as, ubiubi or ubicunque, *wheresoever;* quoquo or quocunque, *whithersoever, &c.* And the same holds also in other interrogative words; as, quisquis, or quicunque, *whosoever;* quotquot or quotcunque, *how many soever;* quantusquantus or quantuscunque, *how great soever;* qualisqualis or qualiscunque, *of what kind* or *quality soever;* utut or utcunque, *however, howsoever, &c.*

CAP. VI.

De Præpositione.

I. PRÆPOSITIONES quæ regunt accusativum sunt viginti-octo, viz.

CHAP. VI.

Of Preposition.

I. THE prepositions which govern the accusative are twenty-eight, viz.

Digitized by Google

Ad,	To.	Infra,	Beneath.
Apud,	At.	Juxta,	Nigh to.
Ante,	Before.	Ob,	For.
Adversus,	Against.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Adversum,		Per,	By, through.
Contra,		Præter,	Besides, except.
Cis,	On this side.	Penes,	In the power of.
Citra,		Post,	After.
Circa,	About.	Pone,	Behind.
Circum,		Secus,	By, along.
Erga,	Towards.	Secundum,	According to.
Extra,	Without.	Supra,	Above.
Inter,	Between, among.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intra,	Within.	Ultra,	Beyond.

II. Præpositiones quæ regunt ablativum sunt quindecim; nempe,

II. The prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

A,	From.	De,	Of, concerning.
Ab,		E,	Of, out of.
Abs,		Ex,	
Absque,	Without.	Pro,	For.
Cum,	With.	Præ,	Before.
Clam,	Without the knowledge of.	Palam,	With the knowledge of.
Coram,	Before.	Sine,	Without.
		Tenus,	Up to.

III. Hæ quatuor interdum accusativum, interdum ablativum, regunt;

III. These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative;

In,	In, into.	Super,	Above.
Sub,	Under.	Subter,	Beneath.

A preposition is an indeclinable word, showing the relation of one substantive-noun to another.

Note. That *pone* and *secus* rarely occur; and *prope*, nigh; *usque*, unto; *circiter*, about; *versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the prepositions governing the accusative; and *procul*, far, among those governing the ablative, are adverbs; and do not govern a case of themselves, but by the preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first four, and *a* or *ab* to the last. To which perhaps may be added *clam*, which is joined very frequently with the accusative; as, *clam patre* or *patrem*; *a* being understood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Besides the separate use of these prepositions, there is another use from them, viz. their being put before a vast number of nouns and

Digitized by Google

verbs in composition, which creates a great variety, and gives a peculiar elegance and beauty to the Latin tongue.

There are five or six syllables, viz. *am, di* or *dis, re, se, con,* which are commonly called inseparable prepositions, because they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am	signifies	round about	as,	ambio	to surround.
Di, Dis	signifies	asunder	as,	divello	to pull asunder.
				distraho	to draw asunder.
Re	signifies	again	as,	relego	to read again.
Se	signifies	aside or apart	as,	sepono	to lay aside.
Con	signifies	together	as,	concresco	to grow together.

CHAP. VII.

OF INTERJECTION.

AN interjection is an indeclinable word thrown into discourse to signify some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some of them express,

1. Joy; as, evax, *hey, brave, io.*
2. Grief; as, ăh, hei, heu, eheu, *ah, alas, woe's me.*
3. Wonder; as, papæ, *O strange;* Vah, *hah.*
4. Praise; as, euge, *well done.*
5. Aversion; as, apăge, *away, begone, fy, tush.*
6. Exclaiming, as, oh, proh, *O.*
7. Surprise or fear; as, atat, *ha,, aha.*
8. Imprecation; as, væ, *wo, pox on it.*
9. Laughter; as, ha, ha, he.
10. Silencing; as, au, 'st, pax, *silence, hush, 'st.*
11. Calling; as, eho, io, ho, *soho, ho, O.*
12. Derision; as, hui, *away with.*
13. Attention; as, hem, *hah.*

NOTE 1. That the same interjection denotes sometimes one passion, and sometimes another; as, *vah,* which is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

NOTE 2. That some of them are natural sounds, common to all languages.

NOTE 3. That nouns are used sometimes for interjections; as, *malum!* with a pox! with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy! fy! *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villainy!

Interjection is a compendious way of expressing a whole sentence in one word; and used only to represent the passions and emotions of the soul, that the shortness of the one might the sooner express the suddenness and quickness of the other.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word that joins sentences together; and thereby shews their dependence upon one another.

Of these, some are called,

1. Copulative; as, et, ac, atque, que, *and;* etiam, quoque, item, *also;* cum, tum, *both, and.* Also their contraries, nec, neque, neu, neve, *neither, nor.*
2. Disjunctive; as, aut, ve, vel, seu, sive, *either, or.*
3. Concessive; as, etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, *tho', altho', albeit.*
4. Adversative; as, sed, verum, tamen, at, ast, atqui, *but;* tamen, attămen, veruntămen, verumenimvēro, *yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.*
5. Causal; as, nam, namque, enim, *for;* quia, quippe, quoniam, *because;* quod, *that, because.*
6. Illative or rational; as, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, ităque, *therefore;* quapropter, quocirca, *wherefore;* proinde, *therefore;* cum, quum, *seeing, since;* quandoquidem, *forasmuch as.*
7. Final or perfective; as, ut, uti, *that, to the end that.*
8. Conditional; as, si, sin, *if;* dum, modo, dummodo, *provided, upon condition that;* siquĭdem, *if indeed.*
9. Exceptive or restrictive; as, ni, nisi, *unless, except.*
10. Diminutive; as, saltem, certe, *at least.*
11. Suspensive or dubitative; as, an, anne, num, *whether;* ne, annon, *whether, not;* necne, *or not.*
12. Expletive; as, autem, vero, *now, truly;* quidem, equĭdem, *indeed.*
13. Ordinative; as, deinde, *thereafter;* denĭque, *finally;* insŭper, *moreover;* cæterum, *moreover, but, however.*
14. Declarative; as, videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimīrum, &c. *to wit, namely.*

NOTE 1. That the same words, as they are taken in different views, are both adverbs and conjunctions; as, *an, anne, &c.* are suspensive conjunctions and interrogative adverbs. The same may be said of the ordinative and declarative conjunctions, which under another view may be ranked under adverbs of order and explaining. So likewise *utinam*, which is commonly called an adverb of wishing, when more narrowly considered is nothing else but the conjunction *uti* [that] with the syllable *nam* added to it; and *opto*, [I wish] understood; as, *utinam adfuisses; ut te deus ma-*

Digitized by Google

le perdat; supple *opto.* But since both of them are indeclinable, there is no great need of being very nice in distinguishing them.

NOTE 2. That other parts of speech compounded together, supply the place of conjunctions; as, *postea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, because, &c. which are made up of the prepositions *post*, *præter*, and *propter*, with *ea*, the pronoun.

NOTE 3. That some conjunctions, according to their natural order stand first in a sentence; as, *et*, *aut*, *nec*, *si*, *&c.* Some, contrary to their natural order, stand in the second place, viz. *autem*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, *enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second, viz. *namque*, *etenim*, *siquidem*, *ergo*, *igitur*, *itaque*, *&c.* Hence arose the division of them into prepositive, subjunctive, and common.

¶ CHAP. IX.

APPENDIX, containing some observations concerning the various divisions and significations of words, especially noun and verb.

1. All words whatsoever are either simple or compound. A simple word *(simplex)* is that which was never more than one; as, *justus*, *lego*. A compound *(compositum)* is that which is made up of two or more words, or of a word and some syllabical adjection; as, *injustus*, *perlĕgo*, *derelinquo*, *egŏmet*.

2. All words whatsoever are either primitive or derivative. A primitive word *(primitivum)* is that which comes from no other word; as, *justus*, *lego*. A derivative *(derivativum)* is that which comes from another word; as, *justitia*, *lectio*.

I. Besides the more general divisions of nouns and pronouns, mentioned *p.* 5, and *p.* 26, there are other particular divisions of them, taken from their various significations and derivations: The most remarkable whereof are these:

I. *With respect to Signification.*

1. A collective *(collectivum)* is a substantive-noun which signifies many in the singular number; as, *populus*, a people; *exercĭtus*, an army.

2. An interrogative noun or pronoun *(interrogativum)* is that by which we ask a question; as, *quis?* who? *uter?* which of the two? *qualis?* of what kind? *quantus?* how great? *quot?* how many? And these, when they are used without a question are called indefinites.

Digitized by Google

3. A relative noun or pronoun *(relativum)* is an adjective that has respect to something spoken before; as, *qui, ille, ipse, &c. Alius, alter, reliquus, cætera, -um, qualis, quantus, &c.*

4. A partitive noun or pronoun *(partitivum)* is an adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were, one by one; as, *omnis, nullus, quisque, &c.* or a part of many; as, *quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo, &c.*

5. A numeral noun *(numerale)* is an adjective which signifies number, of which there are four principal kinds.

(1.) Cardinal *(numerus cardinalis)*; as, *unus, duo, tres, &c.*
(2.) Ordinal *(ordinalis)*; as, *primus, secundus, tertius, &c.*
(3.) Distributive *(distributivus)*; as, *singuli, bini, terni, &c.*
(4.) Multiplicative *(multiplicativus)*; as, *simplex, duplex, triplex, &c.*

II. *With respect to the Signification and Derivation.*

1. A patronymic noun *(patronymicum)* is a substantive-noun derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's pedigree or extraction; as, *Priamĭdes*, the son of *Priamus; Priămis*, the daughter of *Priamus; Æetias*, the daughter of *Æetes; Nerīne*, the daughter of *Nereus*. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father, but the poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the grandfather, or some other remarkable person of the family; nay, sometimes from the founder of a nation or people, and also from countries and cities; as, *Æacĭdes*, the son, grandson, great grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus; Romulĭdæ*, the *Romans*, from their first king *Romulus; Sicelis, Troas*, a woman of *Sicily*, of *Troy, &c.* Patronymics of men end in *des;* of women in *is, as*, and *ne*. Those in *des*, and *ne*, are of the first, and those in *is*, and *as* of the third declension.

2. An abstract noun *(abstractum)* is a substantive derived from an adjective expressing the quality of the adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the quality is; as, *bonĭtas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these abstracts, the adjectives from which they come are called concretes, because, besides the quality, they also confusedly signify something as the subject of it, without which they cannot make sense.

3. A gentile or patrial noun *(gentile* or *patrium)* is an adjective derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country; as, *Scotus, Macēdo, Arpīnas, Edinburgensis, Taodunanus;* a man born in Scotland, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee; from Scotia, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgum, Taodunum.

Digitized by Google

4. A possessive noun *(possessivum)* is an adjective derived from a substantive whether proper or appellative, signifying possession or property: as, *Scotĭcus, Herculeus, paternus, herīlis, fœmineus*, of or belonging to Scotland, Hercules, a father, a master, a woman; from Scotia, Hercules, pater, herus, fœmina.

5. A diminutive noun *(diminutivum)* is a substantive or adjective derived from another substantive or adjective respectively, importing a diminution or lessening of its signification; as, *lĭbellus*, a little book; *chartŭla*, a little paper; *opuscŭlum*, a little work; from liber, charta, opus; *parvŭlus*, very little; *candidŭlus*, pretty white; from parvus, candĭdus. These for the most part end in *lus, la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

6. A denominative noun *(denominativum)* is a substantive or adjective derived from another noun; as, *gratia*, favour; *vinea*, a vineyard; *senător*, a senator; from gratus, vinum, senex; *cœlestis*, heavenly; *humānus*, humane; *aureus*, golden; from cœlum, homo, aurum.

7. A verbal noun *(verbale)* is a substantive or adjective derived from a verb; as, *amor*, love; *doctrīna*, learning; *lectio*, a lesson; *audītus*, hearing, from amo, doceo, lego, audio; *amabilis*, lovely; *capax*, capable; *volŭcer*, swift; from amo, capio, volo.

8. Lastly, There are some nouns derived from participles, adverbs, and prepositions; as, *fictitius*, counterfeit; *crastĭnus*, belonging to the morrow; *contrarius*, contrary; from fictus, cras, contra.

NOTE. That the same nouns, according to the different respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above mentioned classes; as, *quis*, is an interrogative, relative, or partitive; *pietas*, an abstract, or denominative.

II. Pronouns are divided into four classes, viz.

1. Demonstratives; Ego, tu, sui.
2. Relatives; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui.
3. Possessives; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester.
4. Patrials or gentiles; nostras, vestras, cujas.

Of them also two are interrogatives; quis, cujas.

Digitized by Google

III. 1. Verbs, with respect to their figure or frame, are either simple, as, *amo*, I love; or compound, as, *redāmo*, I love again.

2. With respect to their spécies or origin, are either primitive, as, *lego*, I read; or derivative, as, *lectĭto*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their conjugation, are either regular, as, *amo*; or irregular, as, *volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their constituent parts, are either complete, as, *amo*; or defective, as, *inquam*; or redundant, as, *edo*, *edis*, et *es*, &c.

5. With respect to their persons, are either personal, as, *amo*; or impersonal, as, *pœnĭtet*.

6. With respect to their terminations, they either end in *o*, as, *amo*; or in *r*, as, *amor*; or in *m*, as, *sum*.

7 With respect to their signification, verbs are either substantive or adjective.

(1.) A substantive-verb *(substantivum)* is that which signifies simply the affirmation of being or existence: as, *sum*, *fio*, *existo*, I am.

(2.) An adjective-verb *(adjectivum)* is that which together with the signification of being, has a particular signification of its own; as, *amo*; i. e. *sum amans*, I am loving.

An adjective-verb is divided into active, passive, and neuter.

(1.) An active verb *(active)* is that which affirms action of its person or nominative before it; as, *amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

(2.) A passive verb *(passivum)* is that which affirms passion of its person or nominative before it; as, *amor*.

(3.) A neuter verb *(neutrum)* is that which affirms neither action nor passion of its nominative; but simply signifies the state, posture, or quality of things; as, *sto*, *sedeo*, *maneo*, *duro*, *vireo*, *flaveo*, *sapio*, *quiesco*, &c. to stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wise, to rest.

An active verb is again divided into transitive and intransitive.

(1.) An active transitive verb *(transitivum)* is that whose action passeth from the agent to some other thing; as, *amo patrem*.

(2.) An active intransitive verb *(intransitivum)* is that whose action passeth not from the agent to any other; as, *curro*, I run; *ambŭlo*, I walk.

When to any verb you put the question *whom?* or *what?* if a rational answer can be returned, the verb is transitive; as, *whom* or *what do you teach?* Answer, *a boy*, *the grammar*. If not, it is intransitive; as, *what do you run*, *go*, *come*, *live*, *sleep*, &c. to which no rational answer can be given, unless it be by a word of like signification, which sometimes indeed these

Digitized by Google

verbs have after them; as, *vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleasant life; *eo iter longum*, I go a long journey.

NOTE 1. That the same verb is sometimes transitive, and sometimes intransitive; as, *ver incipit*, the spring begins. Cic. *Incipere facinus*, to begin an action. Plaut.

NOTE 2. That neuter and intransitive verbs are often Englished with the sign of the passive verb; as, *caleo*, I am hot; *palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE 3. That neuter and intransitive verbs want the passive voice, unless impersonally used, as the intransitive verbs most frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur, itur, ventum est.*

Though all verbs whatsoever, with respect to their signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing classes, yet because grammarians, together with the signification of verbs, are obliged also to consider their terminations, and finding that all active verbs did not end in *o*, neither all passives in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two or three other classes or kinds of them, viz. *deponent, common*, and *neuter-passive.*

(1) A deponent verb [*deponens*] is that which has a passive termination, but an active or neuter signification; as, *loquor*, I speak; *morior*, I die.

(2) A common verb [*commune*] is that which under a passive termination has a signification either active or passive; as, *criminor*, I accuse, or I am accused; *dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

(3) A neuter-passive, [*neutro-passivum*] is that which is half active and half passive in its termination, but in its signification is either wholly passive, as, *fio, factus sum*, to be made; or wholly active neuter, as, *audeo, ausus sum*, to dare; *gaudeo, gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other kinds of derivative verbs, which are not very material, there are three kinds of them derived from verbs which deserve to be remarked, viz. *frequentatives, inceptives*, and *desideratives.*

(1.) Frequentatives *(verba frequentativa)* signify frequency of action. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ĭto* from verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from verbs of the other three conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *clamito*, to cry frequently, from *clamo; dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio.* From them also are formed other frequentatives; as, curro, curso, cursito; jacio, jacto, jactito; pello, pulso, pulsito, and pulto.

(2.) Inceptives *(verba inceptiva)* signify that a thing is begun and tending to perfection. They are formed from the second person sing. pres. indic. by adding *eo.* They are all of the third conjugation, and want both preterite and supine; as, *caleo, cales, calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

Digitized by Google

(3.) Desideratives *(verba desiderativa)* signify a desire of action. They are formed from the last supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the fourth conjugation, and generally want both preterite and supine; as, *cœnaturio*, I desire to sup; *esurio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, In construction, verbs receive names from their more particular signification; as, vocative verbs, or verbs of naming, verbs of remembering, of want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

In the preceding division of verbs, with respect to their signification, I have receded a little from the common method; and in particular I have given a different account of neuter verbs from that commonly received by grammarians, who comprise under them all intransitive verbs, though their significations be ever so much active. But this I did partly from the reason of the name, which imports a negation both of action and passion, and partly to give a distinct view of the significations of verbs, without regard to their terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the divisions of verbs those called neutral passives [Lat. *neutra passiva*] because originally they are active verbs; for the primary signification of *vapulo* is *pereo* or *ploro*; of *exulo*, *extra solum eo*; of *venio*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular verb, for in the active voice it signifies passively, and in the passive, actively.

PARS TERTIA.

De Sententiis sive Oratione.

SENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *tu legis; tu legis libros; tu legis libros bonos; tu legis libros bonos domi* (*a*).

PART THIRD.

Of Sentences or Speech.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *you read; you read books; you read good books; you read good books at home.*

(*a*) We have now arrived at the principal part of grammar; for the great end of speech being to convey our thoughts unto others, it will be of little use to us to have a stock of words, and to know what changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to practice, and

Digitized by Google

CAP. I.

De Syntaxi vel Constructione.

SYNTAXIS est recta vocum in oratione compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, *concordantia* et *regimen* (*b*).

Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.

Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.

CHAP. I.

Of Syntax or Construction.

SYNTAX is the right ordering of words in speech.

Its parts are two, *concord* and *government*.

Concord is when one word agrees with another in some accidents.

Government is when a word governs a certain case.

I. DE CONCORDANTIA.

CONCORDANTIA est quadruplex.

1. Adjectivi cum substantivo.

2. Verbi cum nominativo.

3. Relativi cum antecedente.

4. Substantivi cum substantivo.

I. OF CONCORD.

CONCORD is fourfold.

1. Of an adjective with a substantive.

2. Of a verb with a nominative.

3. Of a relative with an antecedent.

4. Of a substantive with a substantive.

---

make them answer the great purposes for which they are intended. To the attainment of this end there are two things absolutely necessary, viz. 1. That in speech we dispose and frame our words, according to the laws and rules established among those whose language we speak. 2. That in like manner we know what is spoken or written, and be able to explain it in due order, and resolve it into the several parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called *syntax* or *construction*, and the second is named *exposition* or *resolution*. The first shows us how to speak the language ourselves, and the second how to understand it when spoken by others. —But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary connection between them, that he who is master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(*b*) NOTE 1. That the difference between concord and government consists chiefly in this,—that in concord there can no change be made in the accidents, that is, gender, case, number, or person of the one, but the like change must also be made in the other: But in government, the first word (if declinable) may be changed, without any change in the second. In concord, the first word may be called the word directing, and the second the word directed: In government the first is called the word governing, and the second the word governed.

Digitized by Google

REGULA I.	RULE I.
1 ADJECTIVUM concordat cum substantivo in genere, numero, et casu; ut,	AN adjective agrees with a substantive in gender, number, and case; as,
* Vir † bonus.	A good man.
* Fœmina † casta.	A chaste woman.
† Dulce * pomum.	A sweet apple.
REG. II.	**RULE II.**
2 VERBUM concordat cum nominativo ante se in numero et persona; ut,	A VERB agrees with the nominative before it in number and person; as,
* Ego † lego.	I read.
* Tu † scribis.	You write.
* Præceptor † docet.	The master teacheth.

ANNOTATIONES.

3 1. VERBA substantiva, vocandi et gestus habent utrinque nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem; ut,	1. SUBSTANTIVE verbs, verbs of naming and gesture have a nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same thing; as,

---

NOTE 2. That for the greater ease both of master and scholar, we have noted those words wherein the force of each example lieth, with the marks (*) and (†); the word directing or governing with (*), and the word directed or governed with (†); or where there are two words directing or governing, the first with (*), and the second with (**); and where two words directed or governed, the first with (†), and the second with (††).

Number 1. NOTE 1. That the way to find out the substantive is to ask the question *who* or *what?* to the adjective; for that which answers to it is the substantive. And the same question put to the verb or relative, discovers the nominative or antecedent.

NOTE 2. That another adjective sometimes supplies the place of a substantive; as, *amicus certus*, a sure friend; *bona ferina*, good venison. *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, and *caro* to *ferina*.

NOTE 3. That the substantive *thing (negotium)* is most frequently understood; and then the adjective is always put in the neuter gender, as if it were a substantive; as, *triste*, (supple *negotium*) i. e. *res tristis*, a sad thing; *bona*, (supple *negotia*) i. e. *res bonæ*, good things.

Num. 2. NOTE, That the infinitive mood frequently supplies the place of the nominative; as, *mentiri non est meum*, to lie is not mine (or my property).

Num. 3. (1.) Substantive-verbs are *sum*, *fio*, *forem*, and *existo*.

(2.) Verbs of naming are these passives, *appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nominor*

Digitized by Google

† Ego * sum †† discipŭlus.
† Tu * vocaris †† Joannes.
† Illa * incedit †† regina.

I am a scholar.
You are named John.
She walks [as] a queen.

2. ¶ EXCEP. Infinitivus modus accusativum ante se habet; ut,

Gaudeo * te † valere.

2. ¶ EXCEP. The infinitive mood has an accusative before it; as, 4

I am glad that you are well.

3. ¶ *Esse* habet eundem casum post se quem ante se; ut,

† Petrus cupit * esse †† vir doctus.
Scio † Petrum * esse †† virum doctum.
† Mihi †† negligenti * esse non licet.

3. ¶ *Esse* hath the same case after it that it hath before it; as, 5

Peter desires to be a learned man.
I know that Peter is a learned man.
I am not allowed to be negligent.

---

nuncupor; to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor, &c.*

(3.) Verbs of gesture are, *eo, incedo, venio, cubo, sto, sedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, somnio, maneo, &c.*

NOTE, That any verb may have after it the nominative, when it belongs to the same thing with the nominative before it; as, *audivi hoc puer*, I heard it being (or when I was) a boy; *defendi rempublicam adolescens, non deseram senex*, I defended the commonwealth (when I was) a young man, I will not desert it (now that I am) old. Cic.

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the particle *that* (in Lat. *quod* or *ut*) comes between two verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the nominative case into the accusative, and the verb into the infinitive mood; as, *aiunt regem adventare*, they say (that) the king is coming; rather than *aiunt quod rex adventat; turpe est eos, qui bene nati sunt, turpiter vivere*, it is a shameful thing, that they who are well born, should live basely; rather than, *ut ii turpiter vivant.* See *p.* 53.

Num. 5. NOTE 1. That we frequently say, *licet nobis esse bonos*, we may be good; *tibi expedit esse sedulum*, it is expedient for you to be diligent; *nemini unquam nocuit fuisse pium*, it never hurted any man that he hath been pious: But then the accusative, *nos, te, illum, &c.* is understood; thus, *licet nobis (nos) esse bonos, &c.*

NOTE 2. That if *esse*, and the other infinitives of substantive-verbs, verbs of naming, &c. have no accusative or dative before them, the word that follows (whether substantive or adjective) is to be put in the nominative; as, *dicitur esse vir*, he is said to be a man; *non videtur esse facturus*, he seems not about to do it; *nemo debet dici beatus ante suum obitum*, no man should be called happy before his death.

Digitized by Google

REG. III.	RULE III.
6 * RELATIVUM *qui, quæ, quod*, concordat cum antecedente in genere et numero; ut,	THE relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender and number; as,
* Vir sapit † qui pauca loquĭtur.	He is a wise man who speaks little.
7 1. Si nullus interveniat nominativus inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit verbo nominativus; ut,	1. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be the nominative to the verb; as,
Præceptor * qui † docet.	The master who teacheth.
8 2. At si interveniat nominativus inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit ejus casus quem verbum aut nomen sequens, vel præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,	2. But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before use to govern; as,
Deus † quem * colĭmus.	God whom we worship.
† Cujus * munere vivimus.	By whose gift we live.
† Cui nullus est * simĭlis.	To whom there is none like.
* A † quo facta sunt omnia.	By whom all things were made.

ANNOTATIO.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura substantiva singularia, conjunctione *(et,*	¶ Two or more substantives singular coupled together with

Num. 6. NOTE 1. That the antecedent is a substantive-noun that goes before the relative, and is again understood to the relative—Wherefore it will not be amiss to teach the scholar to supply it every where; thus, Beware of idleness, which (idleness) is an enemy to virtue, *cave segnitiem, quæ (segnities) est inimica virtuti.* Nay Cicero himself, but especially Cæsar, frequently repeats the substantive; as, *in oppidum perfugisti, quo in oppido, &c.* you fled to a town, in which town, &c. Cic. *Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant,* they appoint a day, on which day they should meet upon the bank of the river Rhone. Cæs.

NOTE 2. That when the relative respects a whole sentence, it is put in the neuter gender; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mihi summo dolori est,* John is dead, which is a great grief to me.

NOTE 3. That the person of the relative is always the same with that of its antecedent; as, *ego qui doceo,* I who teach. *Tu qui discis,* you who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur,* the lesson which is taught.

Num. 9. NOTE 1. That when the substantives are of different genders, and signify persons, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine; as, *pater et mater qui sunt mortui,* The father and mother who are dead.

Digitized by Google

ac, atque, &c.) copulata, habent adjectivum, verbum, vel relativum plurale; ut,

* Petrus et ** Joannes † qui † sunt † docti.

a conjunction *(et, ac, atque, &c.)* have a verb, adjective, or relative plural; as,

Peter and John who are learned.

REG. IV.

UNUM substantivum concordat cum alio, eandem rem significante, in casu; ut,

* Cicero † orator.
* Urbs † Edinburgum.
* Filius † deliciæ matris suæ *(a)*.

RULE IV.

ONE substantive agrees with another, signifying the same thing, in case; as,

Cicero the orator.
The city of Edinburgh.
A son the darling of his mother.

II. DE REGIMINE.

REGIMEN est triplex.

1. Nominum.
2. Verborum.
3. Vocum indeclinabilium.

II. OF GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT is threefold.

1. Of nouns.
2. Of verbs.
3. Of words indeclinable.

EXCEP. But if the substantives, or any of them, signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural, must be put in the neuter gender; as, *divitiæ, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt*, riches, honour, and glory are set before your eyes.

NOTE 2. That when two or more nominatives are of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as, *si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, if you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

NOTE 3. That the adjective or verb frequently agree with the substantive or nominative that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, *et ego in culpa sum et tu*, both I and you are in the fault; or, *et ego et tu es in culpa. Nihil hic deest nisi carmina*, there is nothing here wanting but charms; or, *nihil hic nisi carmina desunt.* This manner of construction is most usual, when the different words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same purpose; as, *mens, ratio, et consilium in senibus est*, understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men.

NOTE 4. That collective nouns, because they are equivalent to a plural number, have sometimes the adjective or verb in the plural number; as, *pars virgis cæsi*, a part of them were scourged. *Turba ruunt*, the crowd rush.

(a) To these four concords some add a fifth, viz. That of the responsive, agreeing with its interrogative in case; as, *quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater*, who gave you money? My father. *Quo cares? Libro*, what do want? A book. But this ought not to be made a principal rule; for the

Digitized by Google

I. Regimen nominum.

§ 1. *Substantivorum.*

REG. I.

11 UNUM substantivum regit aliud, rem diversam significans, in genitivo; ut,
* Amor † Dei.
* Lex † natūræ.

I. Government of nouns.

§ 1. *Of Substantives.*

RULE I.

ONE substantive governs another, signifying a different thing in the genitive; as,
The love of God.
The law of nature.

ANNOTATIONES.

12 ‡ 1. Si posterius substantivum adjunctum habeat adjectivum laudis vel vituperii, in genitivo vel ablativo poni potest; ut,
* Vir † summæ † prudentiæ, *v.* † summa † prudentia.
* Puer † probæ † indŏlis, *v.* † proba † indole.

13 ‡ 2. Adjectivum in neutro genere, absque substantivo, regit genitivum; ut,
* Multum † pecuniæ.
* Quid † rei?

1. If the last substantive have an adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,
A man of great wisdom.
A boy of a good disposition.

2. An adjective in the neuter gender, without a substantive, governs the genitive; as,
Much money.
What is the matter?

---

responsive, or the word that answers the question, does not depend upon the interrogative, but upon the verb or some other word joined with it; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the answer; thus, *quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* (dedit mihi pecuniam). *Quo cares?* (Careo) *libro.*

Num. 11. Note 1. That *of* or *'s* is the ordinary sign of this genitive.

Note 2. That the relative pronouns, *ejus, illius, cujus, &c.* Englished, his, hers, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose, have their substantives generally understood; as, *liber ejus,* (supple *hominis, fœminæ, &c.*) his book or her book. *Libri eorum* (supple *hominum, fœminarum, &c.*) their books.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *multa pecunia; quæ res?*

Note 1. That those adjectives which thus govern the genitive, as if they were substantives, are generally such as signify quantity; as, multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.

Note 2. That *plus* and *quid* always govern the genitive, and upon that account are by many thought real substantives.

Digitized by Google

§ 2. *Adjectivorum.*

REG. I.

‡ ADJECTIVA verbalia vel affectionem animi significantia genitivum postulant; ut,

* Avidus † gloriæ.
* Ignarus † fraudis.
* Memor † beneficiorum.

REG. II.

* PARTITIVA et partitive posita, comparativa, superlativa, interrogativa, et quædam numeralia genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

* Aliquis † philosophorum.
* Senior † fratrum.
* Quis † nostrum?
* Doctissimus † Romanorum.
* Una † Musarum.
* Octavus † sapientum.

§ 2. *Of Adjectives.*

RULE I.

VERBAL adjectives or 14 such as signify an affection of the mind, require the genitive; as,

Desirous of glory.
Ignorant of fraud.
Mindful of favours.

RULE II.

PARTITIVES and words 15 placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals govern the genitive plural; as,

Some one of the philosophers.
The elder of the brothers.
Which of us? [mans.
The most learned of the Ro-
One of the Muses.
The eighth of the wise men.

Num. 14. To this rule belong,

1. Adjectives of desire; as, cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus.

2. Of knowledge; as, peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præscius, præsagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, &c.

3. Of ignorance; as, ignarus, rudis, imperitus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor.

4. Of guilt; as, conscius, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus.

5 Verbals in *ax* and *ns*; as, edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax: And amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens, &c.

6. To which may be referred, æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, profusus, securus.

Num. 15. Note 1. That it is easy to know when this rule takes place, by resolving the genitive into *inter* with the accusative; or *de, e, x,* with the ablative; as, *optimus regum,* the best of kings, i. e. *optimus inter reges;* or *de, e, ex, regibus.*

Note 2. That when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last; as, *Indus fluminum maximus.* Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus.* Plin. Otherwise it is of the same gender, with the substantive it governs; as, *pauca animalium. Unaquæque fœminarum.*

Digitized by Google

REG. III.	RULE III.
16 ADJECTIVA significantia commodum vel incommodum, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, regunt dativum; ut,	ADJECTIVES signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative; as,
* Utilis † bello.	Profitable for war.
* Perniciosus † reipublicæ.	Pernicious to the commonwealth.
* Similis † patri.	Like his father.
17 ¶ Verbalia in *bilis* et *dus* regunt dativum; ut,	Verbals in *bilis* and *dus* govern the dative; as,
* Amandus vel * amabĭlis † omnibus.	To be loved of all men.
REG. IV.	RULE IV.
18 * ADJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt accusativum mensuræ; ut,	ADJECTIVES signifying dimension govern the accusative of measure; as,
Columna sexaginta † pedes * alta.	A pillar sixty feet high.

Note 3. That partitives, &c. take the genitive singular of collective nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in gender; as, *præstantissimus nostræ civitatis.* Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una.* Virg.

Num. 16 Note 1. That some of these adjectives govern also the genitive; as, amicus, inimicus, socius, vicinus, par, æqualis, similis, dissimilis, proprius, communis, &c.

Note 2. That adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, choose rather the accusative with *ad*, than the dative; such as, proclivis, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger, &c. as,

Est piger ad pœnas princeps, ad præmia velox. Ovid.

Note 3. That adjectives signifying fitness or the contrary may have either of them; as, aptus, ineptus bello or ad bellum.

Num. 17. *Of* or *by* is the ordinary sign of this dative.

Note. That participles of the preter tense, and passive verbs also, especially among the poets, have frequently the dative instead of the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as, *nullus eorum mihi visus est*, no one of them was seen by me. *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18 The adjectives of dimension are—*altus*, high or deep; *crassus* or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The names of measure are, *digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, an hand-breadth; *pes*, a foot; *cubitus*, a cubit; *ulna*, an ell; *passus*, a pace, &c.

Note 1. That verbs signifying dimension likewise have the accusative of measure; as, *patet tres ulnas*, it is three ells large. Virg.

Note 2. That sometimes the word of measure is put in the ablative; as, *fossa sex cubitis alta, duodecim lata.* Liv. *Venter ejus extat sesquipede.*

Digitized by Google

REG. V.

* COMPARATIVUS regit ablativum, qui resolvitur per *quam*; ut,
* Dulcior † melle.
* Præstantior † auro.

RULE V.

THE comparative degree 19
governs the ablative, which is resolved by *quam*; as,
Sweeter than honey.
Better than gold.

REG. VI.

‡ HÆC adjectiva, dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, et fretus: item natus, satus, ortus, editus, et similia, ablativum petunt; ut,
* Dignus † honore.
* Præditus † virtute.
* Contentus † parvo.
* Captus † oculis.
* Fretus † viribus.
* Ortus † regibus.

RULE VI.

THESE adjectives, dig- 20
nus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captivus, and fretus: also natus, satus, ortus, editus, and the like, require the ablat. as,
Worthy of honour.
Endued with virtue.
Content with little.
Blind.
Trusting to his strength.
Descended of kings.

REG. VII.

ADJECTIVUM copiæ aut inopiæ regit genitivum vel ablativum; ut,
* Plenus † iræ vel † ira.
* Inops † rationis.

RULE VII.

AN adjective of plenty or 21
want governs the genitive or ablative; as,
Full of anger.
Void of reason.

Pers. And sometimes, but rarely, in the Genitive; as, *nec longiores duodenum pedum.* Plin.

Num. 19. Let the following examples be observed and imitated: *Multo melior*, much better. *Nihilo pejor*, nothing worse. *Major solito*, greater than usual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evades*, the more diligent you are, the more learned you will become *Quanto superbior, tanto vilior*, the prouder, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*, there is none more learned than Virgil.

Num. 21. NOTE 1. That *distentus, gravidus, refertus*; and *orbus, vacuus, viduus*, choose rather the ablative; *indigus, compos, impos*, the genitive.

NOTE 2. That some comprehend *opus* and *usus*, when they signify necessity, under this rule; as, *quid opus est verbis?* what need is there of words? Ovid. *Nunc viribus usus*, now there is need of strength. Virg. But it is to be remarked that these are substantive-nouns, the very same with *opus, operis*, a work; *usus, usus*, use; and have the ablative after them, because of the preposition *in*, which is understood. Sometimes *opus* is an adjective indeclinable; as, *dux nobis opus est*, we stand in need of a leader. It is elegantly joined with the participle perfect; as, *con-*

Digitized by Google

II. Regimen verborum.

§ 1. *Personalium.*

REG. I.

22 ‡ SUM quoties possessionem, proprietatem, aut officium significat, regit genitivum; ut,

* Est †regis punire rebelles.
† Insipientis * est dicĕre, "non putaram."
† Militum * est suo duci parēre.

23 ¶ Excipiuntur hi nominativi, meum, tuum, sŭum, nostrum, vestrum; ut,

† Tuum * est id procurare.

REG. II.

24 * MISEREOR, miseresco, et satăgo regunt genitivum; ut,

* Miserere † civium tuorum.
* Satagit † rerum suarum.

REG. III.

25 EST pro *habeo* regit dativum personæ; ut,

* Est † mihi liber.
* Sunt † mihi libri.

II. Government of verbs.

§ 1. *Of Personal Verbs.*

RULE I.

SUM, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

It belongs to the king to punish rebels.
It is the property of a fool to say, "I had not thought."
It is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.

¶ These nominatives, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, are excepted; as,

It is your duty to manage that.

RULE II.

MISEREOR, miseresco, and satăgo, govern the genitive; as,

Take pity on your countrymen.
He hath his hands full at home.

RULE III.

EST, taken for *habeo*, (to have) governs the dative of a person; as,

I have a book.
I have books.

---

sulto, maturato, invento, facto, &c. opus est, we must advise, make haste, find out, do, &c.

Num. 23. To these last may be added possessive nouns; such as, *regium, humanum, belluinum*, and the like; as, *humanum est errare*, it is incident to man to err.

Note. That to all these is understood, *officium, opus, negotium*, or some other word to be gathered from the sentence; as, *me Pompei totum esse scis*, you know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's interest.—Cic. i. e. *amicum, fautorem*, or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *habeo librum*, or *habeo libros*.

Digitized by Google

REG. IV.

SUM pro *affero* regit duos dativos, unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,

* Est † mihi †† voluptati.

RULE IV.

SUM taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

It is (brings) a pleasure to me.

REG. V.

VERBUM significans commodum vel incommodum regit dativum; ut,

Fortuna * favet † fortibus.
† Nemĭni * noceas.

RULE V.

A VERB signifying advantage or disadvantage governs the dative; as,

Fortune favours the brave.
Do hurt to no man.

So *desum* is used elegantly for *careo*; as, *desunt mihi libri*, for *careo libris*, I want books.

Num. 26 NOTE. That other verbs, such as, *do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, relinquo, &c.* may have two datives; as, *hoc tibi laudi datur*, you are praised for this. *Ne mihi vitio vertas*, do not blame me.

To this may be referred such expressions as these; *est mihi nomen Joanni*, my name is John; which is more elegant than, *est mihi nomen Joannes* or *Joannis*.

Num. 27. This is a very general rule, and (when we signify a thing to be acquired to any person or thing) almost common to all verbs. But in a more particular manner are comprehended under it,

Verbs signifying,

1. To profit or hurt; as, commodo, proficio, placeo, consulo, noceo, officio. But lædo, and offendo govern the accusative.

2. To favour, to help, and their contraries; as, faveo, annuo, arrideo, assentior, adstipulor, gratulor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, studeo, supplico, &c. Also, auxilior, administror, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor: Also, derogo, detraho, invideo, &c. But juvo has the accusative.

3. To command, obey, or resist; as, impero, præcipio, mando; pareo, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, famulor; pugno, repugno, certo, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, adversor, refragor, &c. But jubeo governs the accusative.

4. To threaten, or be angry with; as, minor, indignor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust; as, fido, confido, credo.

6. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene*, and *male*; as, satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.

7. *Sum*, with its compounds; except *possum*.

8. Verbs compounded with these ten prepositions; *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub*, and *super*; as, 1. Adsto, accumbo, acquiesco, assideo, adhæreo, admoveo. 2. Antecello, anteeo, anteverto. 3. Consono, commisceo, condono, commorior. 4. Illudo, immorior, inhæreo, insideo, inhio, innitor, invigilo, incumbo. 5. Interpono, intervenio, intersero. 6. Obrepo, obtrecto, occumbo. 7. Postpono, posthabeo. 8. Præeo, præ-

Digitized by Google

REG. VI.

28 VERBUM active significans regit accusativum; ut,
* * Ama † Deum.
* Reverere † parentes.

29 ‡ Recordor, memini, reminiscor, et obliviscor regunt accusativum vel genitivum; ut,
* Recordor † lectionis vel † lectionem.
* Obliviscor † injuriæ vel † injuriam.

VERBA activa alium una cum accusativo casum regentia.

30 § 1. VERBA accusandi, damnandi, et absolvendi, cum accusativo personæ, regunt etiam genitivum criminis; ut,
* Arguit † me †† furti.
† Meipsum †† inertiæ * condemno.
† Illum †† homicidii * absolvunt.

RULE VI.

A VERB signifying actively governs the accusative; as,
Love God.
Reverence your parents.

Recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obliviscor govern the accusative or genitive; as,
I remember my lesson.
I forget an injury.

ACTIVE verbs governing another case together with the accusative.

1. VERBS of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, with the accusative of the person, govern also the genitive of the crime; as,
He accuses me of theft.
I condemn myself of laziness.
They acquit him of manslaughter.

---

stat for excellit, præluceo. 9. Succedo, submitto, subjicio. 10. Superstо, supervenio.

NOTE 1. That *to*, the sign of the dative, is frequently understood.

NOTE 2. That *to* is not always a sign of the dative; for, 1. Verbs of local motion; as, eo, venio, proficiscor: and, 2. These verbs, provoco, voco, invito, hortor, specto, pertineo, attineo, and such like, have the accusative with the preposition *ad*.

Num. 28. NOTE. That neuter and intransitive verbs have sometimes an accusative after them. 1. Of their own or the like signification; as, *vivere vitam, gaudere gaudium, sitire sanguinem, olere hircum.* 2. When taken in a metaphorical sense; as, *ardebat Alexin*, i. e. *vehementer amabat.*

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of accusing are, accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo, &c.

2. Verbs of condemning are, damno, condemno, convinco, &c.

3. Verbs of absolving are, solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.

NOTE 1. That the genitive may be changed into the ablative, either with or without a preposition; as, *purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*, I clear you of this fault. *Eum de vi condemnavit*, he found him guilty of a riot.

C.

Digitized by Google

§ 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi, et auferendi, regunt accusativum cum dativo; ut,

2. Verbs of comparing, 31 giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative with the dative; as,

* Compăro † Virgilium †† Homēro.
I compare Virgil to Homer.

† Suum †† cuique * tribuito.
Give every man his due.

* Narras † fabulam †† surdo.
You tell a story to a deaf man.

* Eripuit † me †† morti.
He rescued me from death.

§ 3. Verba rogandi et docendi duos admittunt accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei; ut,

3. Verbs of asking and 32 teaching admit of two accusatives, the first of a person, and the second of a thing; as,

* Posce † Deum †† veniam.
Beg pardon of God.

* Docuit † me †† grammaticam.
He taught me grammar.

ANNOTATIO.

§ Quorum activa duos casus regunt, eorum passiva posteriorem retinent; ut,

The passives of such active 33 verbs as govern two cases, do still retain the last of them; as,

---

Note 2. That the genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some ablative understood, such as, crimine, pœna, actione, causa; as, *accusare furti*, i. e. *crimine furti*. *Condemnare capitis* i. e. *pœna capitis*.

Note 3. That crimine, pœna, actione, capite, morte, scarcely admit of a preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To verbs of comparing belong also verbs of preferring or postponing.

2. To verbs of giving belong verbs of receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.

3. To verbs of declaring belong verbs of explaining, shewing, denying, &c.

4. Verbs of taking away are, aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, surripio, detraho, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo, &c.

Note 1. That many of these verbs govern the dative by *Num.* 27.

Note 2. That innumerable other verbs may have the accusative with the dative, when together with the thing done is also signified the person or thing, to or for, whom it is done; as, *doce mihi filium*, teach me my son. *Cura mihi hanc rem*, take care of this affair for me.

Note 3. That comparo, confero, compono, have frequently the ablative with *cum*.

Num. 32. Note 1. That among the verbs that govern two accusatives, are also reckoned the following:

1. Celo; as, *cela hanc rem uxorem*, conceal this from your wife. Plaut. But we can say also, *celo te de hac re*, and, *celo tibi hanc rem*.

Digitized by Google

* Accusor † furti.
Virgilius * comparatur † Homēro.
* Doceor † grammaticam.

I am accused of theft.
Virgil is compared to Homer.
I am taught grammar.

REG. VII.

34 § PRETIUM rei a quovis verbo in ablativo regitur; ut,

* Emi librum † duobus assibus.
* Vendĭdit hic † auro patriam.
Demosthenes * docuit † talento.

RULE VII.

THE price of a thing is governed in the ablative by any verb; as,

I bought a book for two shillings.
This man sold his country for gold.
Demosthenes taught for a talent.

35 ‡ Excipiuntur hi genitivi, tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris; ut,

† Quanti * constitit?
Asse et † pluris.

These genitives, tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris, are excepted; as,

How much cost it?
A shilling and more.

36 * Verba æstimandi regunt hujusmodi genitivos, magni, parvi, nihili, &c. ut,

* Æstimo te † magni.

Verbs of valuing govern such genitives as these, magni, parvi, nihili, &c. ut,

I value you much.

---

2. Verbs of clothing; as, *induit se calceos*, he put on his shoes. But these have more commonly the ablative of the thing without a preposition; as, *vestit se purpura*, he clothes himself with purple. *Induo* and *exuo* have frequently the person in the dative, and the thing in the accusative; as, *thoracem sibi induit*, he put on his breast-plate.

3. *Moneo*; as, *id unum te moneo*, I put you in mind of this one thing. But unless it is some general word, (as, hoc, illud, id, &c.) moneo, admoneo, commonefacio, have either the genitive, as, *admoneo te officii*, I put you in mind of your duty: Or the ablative with *de*; as, *de hac re te sæpius admonui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

Note 2. That verbs of asking often change the accusative of the person into an ablative with the preposition; as, *oro, exoro, peto, postulo hoc a te*, I entreat this of you: Some always; as, *contendo, quæro, scitor, sciscitor hoc a te*. Finally, some have the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing with *de*; as, *interrogo, consulo, percontor, te de hac re*.

Num. 35. Note. That if the substantive be expressed they are put in the ablative; as, *quanto pretio? minore mercede*.

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of valuing are, æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.

2. The rest of the genitives are, minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, assis, teruncii, hujus: Also, d boni after facio and consulo.

Digitized by Google

REG. VIII.

‡ VERBA copiæ et inopiæ plerumque ablativum regunt; ut,

* Abundat † divitiis.
* Caret omni † culpa.

‡ Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, regunt ablativum; ut,

* Utitur † fraude.
* Abutitur † libris.

RULE VIII.

VERBS of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

He abounds in riches.
He has no fault.

* Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the ablative; as,

He uses deceit.
He abuses books.

37

38

§ 2. *Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.*

REG. IX.

VERBUM impersonale regit dativum; ut,

* Expedit † reipublicæ.
* Licet † nemini peccare.

‡ EXCEP. 1. Refert et interest genitivum postulant; ut,

* Refert † patris.
* Interest † omnium.

§ 2. *The Government of Impersonal Verbs.*

RULE IX.

AN impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

It is profitable for the state.
No man is allowed to sin.

39

EXCEP. 1. Refert and interest require the genitive; as,

It concerns my father.
It is the interest of all.

40

NOTE 1. That we say also, æstimo magno, parvo, supple pretio.

NOTE 2. That Alvarus excludes majoris as wanting authority. But there is an example of it to be found in Phædrus, II. 5. 35.

Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt.

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the genitive; as, *eget æris*, he wants money. Hor. *Implentur veteris Bacchi*, they are filled with old wine. Virg.

NOTE. That verbs of loading and unloading, and the like, belong to this rule; as, *navis oneratur mercibus*, the ship is loaded with goods. *Levabo te hoc onere*, I will ease you of this burden. *Liberavit nos metu*, he delivered us from fear.

Num. 38. To these verbs add, nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, communico, victito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, afficio, consto, prosequor, &c.

NOTE. That potior sometimes governs the genitive; as, *potiri hostium*, to get his enemies into his power. *Potiri rerum*, to have the chief rule.

Num. 39. Such as these, accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, præstat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit, &c. Together with the dative, they have commonly an infinitive after them, which is supposed to supply the place of a nominative before them.

Digitized by Google

41 ‡ At mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, ponuntur in accusativo plurali; ut,
Non † mea * refert.

But mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, are put in the accusative plural; as,
I am not concerned.

42 ‡ EXCEP. 2. Hæc quinque, miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, et piget, regunt accusativum personæ, cum genitivo rei; ut,
* Misĕret † me †† tui.
* Pœnĭtet † me †† peccati.
* Tædet † me †† vitæ.

EXCEP. 2. These five, miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and piget, govern the accus. of a person with the genit. of a thing; as,
I pity you.
I repent of my sin.
I am weary of my life.

43 ‡ EXCEP. 3. Hæc quatuor, decet, delectat, juvat, oportet, regunt accusativum personæ cum infinitivo; ut,
* Delectat † me †† studēre.
Non * decet † te †† rixari.

EXCEP. 3. These four, decet, delectat, juvat, oportet, govern the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as,
I delight to study.
It does not become you to [scold.

§ 3. *Regimen Infinitivi, Participiorum, Gerundiorum, et Supinorum.*

§ 3. *The Government of the Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.*

REG. X.

44 UNUM verbum regit aliud in infinitivo; ut,
* Cupio † discĕre.

RULE X.

ONE verb governs another in the infinitive; as,
I desire to learn.

REG. XI.

45 PARTICIPIA, gerundia, et supina, regunt casum suorum verborum; ut,
* Amans † virtūtem.
* Carens † fraude.

RULE XI.

PARTICIPLES, gerunds, and supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,
Loving virtue.
Wanting guile.

Num. 42. NOTE. That this genitive is frequently turned into the infinitive; as, *pœnitet me peccasse; tædet me vivere;* and so they fall in with the following rule.

Num. 43. NOTE. That *oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mood, *ut* being understood; as, *oportet faciat,* (you must do it) for *oportet te facere.*

Attinet, pertinet, and spectat, when used impersonally (which rarely happens) have the accusative with *ad,* as was observed above, *p.* 103.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by adj. as, *cupidus et cupiens discere.*

Digitized by Google

Gerundia.

1. Gerundium in *dum* nominativi casus cum verbo *est* regit dativum; ut,

* Vivendum est † mihi recte.
* Moriendum est † omnibus.

2. Gerundium in *di* regitur a substantivis vel adjectivis; ut,

* Tempus † legendi.
* Cupĭdus † discendi.

3. Gerundium in *do* dativi casus regitur ab adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus; ut,

Charta * utĭlis † scribendo.

4. Gerundium in *dum* accusativi casus regitur a prepositionibus *ad* vel *inter*; ut,

Promptus * ad † audiendum.
Attentus * inter † docendum.

5. Gerundium in *do* ablativi casus regitur a prepositionibus, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, vel *in*; ut,

Pœna * a † peccando absterret.

Gerunds.

1. The gerund in *dum* of the nominative case, with the verb *est* governs the dative; as, 46

I must live well.
All must die.

2. The gerund in *di* is governed by substantives or adjectives; as, 47

Time of reading.
Desirous to learn.

3. The gerund in *do* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as, 48

Paper useful for writing.

4. The gerund in *dum* of the accus. case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as, 49

Ready to hear.
Attentive in time of teaching.

5. The gerund in *do* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, 50

Punishment frightens from sinning.

Note. That the verb cœpit or cœperunt is sometimes understood; as, *omnes mihi invidere*, (supple cœperunt,) they all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This dative is frequently understood; as, *eundum est*, (supple nobis,) we must go.

Note. That this gerund always imports necessity, and the dative after it is the person on whom the necessity lies.

Num. 47. 1. The substantives are such as these; amor, causa, gratia, studium, tempus, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido, &c.

2. The adjectives are generally verbals, mentioned *Num.* 14.

Num. 48. The adjective of fitness is often understood; as, *non est solvendo*, he is not able to pay (supple aptus or par).

Note. That sometimes this gerund is governed by a verb; as, *Epidicum quærendo operam dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus. Plaut.

Num. 49. Note 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the prepositions *ob* and *ante*; as, *ob absolvendum munus*, for finishing your task. Cic. *Ante domandum*, before they are tamed or broken, Virg. speaking of horses.

Note 2. That what was the gerund in *dum* of the nominative with

Digitized by Google

51 ‡ Vel sine præpositione, ut ablativus modi vel causæ; ut,

Memoria † excolendo * augetur.
* Defessus sum † ambulando.

Or without a preposition as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

The memory is improved by exercising it.
I am wearied with walking.

52 6. Gerundia accusativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in participia in *dus*, quæ cum suis substantivis in genere, numero, et casu concordant; ut,

Petendum est pacem.
Tempus petendi pacem.
Ad petendum pacem.
A petendo pacem.

6. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into the participles in *dus*, which agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

Petenda est pax.
Tempus petendæ pacis.
Ad petendam pacem.
A petenda pace.

Supina.

53 ‡ 1. Supinum in *um* ponitur post verbum motus; ut,

‡ Abiit † deambulatum.

Supines.

1. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

He hath gone to walk.

---

verb *est, fuit, &c.* becomes the accusative with *esse;* as, *omnibus moriendum esse novimus*, we know that all must die.

Num. 52. Add to these the gerunds of fungor, fruor, and potior.

These participles in *dus* are commonly called gerundives.

Note 1. That the substantive must always be of the same case that the gerund was of.

Note 2. That because of its noisy sound, the gerund in *di* is seldom changed into the genitive plural; but either the accusative is retained; as, *studio patres vestros videndi*, rather than *patrum vestrorum videndorum;* or it is turned into the genitive plural without changing the gerund; as, *patrum vestrorum videndi studio.* Thus Valla and Farnabius; but see my Gram. Maj. *vol.* 2. *p.* 276.

Num. 53. The supine in *um* is elegantly used with the verb *eo* when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a thing; as, *in mea vita tu laudem is quæsitum?* are you going to advance your reputation at the hazard of my life? Ter. And this is the reason why this supine with *iri* taken impersonally supplies the place of the future of the infinitive passive.

SOME GENERAL REMARKS ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Note 1. That participles, gerunds, and supines have a two-fold construction; one, as they partake of the nature of verbs, by which they govern a certain case after them; another, as they partake of the nature of nouns, and consequently are subject to the same rules with them; thus,

1. A participle is always an adjec. agreeing with its substan. by *Num.* 1.

Digitized by Google

‡ 2. Supinum in *u* ponitur post nomen-adjectivum; ut
* Facile † dictu.

2. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective-noun; as,
Easy to tell or to be told.

§ 4. *Constructio Circumstantiarum.*

§ 4. *The Construction of Circumstances (a).*

1. *Causa, Modus, et Instrumentum.*

1. *The Cause, Manner, and Instrument.*

REG. XII.

‡ CAUSA, modus, et instrumentum ponuntur in ablativo; ut,
* Palleo † metu.
* Fecit † suo more.
* Scribo † calámo.

RULE XII.

THE cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,
I am pale for fear.
He did it after his own way.
I write with a pen.

2. A gerund is a substantive, and construed as follows. (1.) That in *dum* of the nominative, by *Num.* 2. Of the accusative by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *di*, by *Num.* 11 or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the dative, by *Num.* 16. Of the ablative, by *Num* 69, 71, or 55.

3. A supine is also a substantive. (1.) That in *um* governed by *ad* understood, by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *u* governed by *in* understood, by *Num.* 71.

NOTE 2. That the present of the infinitive active, the first supine, and the gerund in *dum*, with the preposition *ad*, are thus distinguished:—The supine is used after verbs of motion; the infinitive after any other verbs; the gerund in *dum* with *ad* after adjective-nouns. But these last are frequently to be met with after verbs of motion; and poets use also the infinitive after adjectives.

NOTE 3. That the present of the infinitive passive, and the last supine are thus distinguished: The supine hath always an adjective before it; which the infinitive hath not, unless (as I said) among poets.

Num. 55. NOTE 1. That the cause is known by the question *cur?* or *quare?* why? wherefore? &c. The manner by the question *quomodo?* how? And the instrument by the question *quocum?* wherewith?

(a) Adjective-nouns, but especially verbs, have frequently some circumstances going along with them in discourse; the most considerable whereof, with respect to construction, are these five: 1. The cause or reason why any thing is done. 2. The way or manner how it is done. 3. The instrument or thing wherewith it is done. 4. The place where. 5. The time when it is done.

NOTE 2. That the preposition is frequently expressed with the cause and manner; as, *præ gaudio*, for joy. *Propter amorem*, for love. *Ob culpam*, for a fault. *Cum summo labore*, with great labour. *Per dedecus*, with disgrace. But the preposition *(cum)* is never added to the instrument; for we cannot say, *scribo cum calamo; cum ocŭlis vidi.*

NOTE 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the instrument and what is called *ablativus comitatus*, or, ablative of concomitancy: i. e. signifying that something was in company with another; for t

Digitized by Google

2. *Locus.*

REG. XIII.

56 ‡ 1. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in genitivo, cum questio fit per *ubi;* ut,

* Vixit † Romæ.
* Mortuus est † Londĭni.

57 ‡ EXCEP. Si vero sit tertiæ declinationis, aut pluralis numeri, in ablativo effertur; ut,

* Habĭtat † Carthagĭne.
* Studuit † Parisiis.

58 § 2. Cum questio fit per *quo*, nomen oppidi in accusativo regitur; ut,

* Venit † Edinburgum.
* Profectus est † Athēnas.

59 ‡ 3. Si quæratur per *unde* vel *qua*, nomen oppidi ponitur in ablativo; ut,

* Discessit † Aberdonia.
* Laodicēa iter † faciebat.

2. *Place.*

RULE XIII.

THE name of a town is put in the genitive, when the question is made by *ubi (where)*; as,

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

EXCEP. But if it be of the third declension, or of the plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

He dwells at Carthage.
He studied at Paris.

2. When the question is made by *quo (whither)*, the name of a town is governed in the acc. as,

He came to Edinburgh.
He went to Athens.

3. If the question be made by *unde (whence)*, or *qua (by* or *through* what place*)*, the name of a town is put in the ablat. as,

He went from Aberdeen.
He went through Laodicea.

---

the preposition *(cum)* is generally expressed; as, *ingressus est cum gladio*, he entered with a sword; i. e. having a sword with him or about him.

NOTE 4. That to cause some refer the matter of which any thing is made; as, *clypeus ære fabricatus*, a shield made of brass. But (except with the poets) the preposition is for the most part expressed.

NOTE 5. That to manner some refer the adjunct, i. e. something joined to another thing; as, *terra amœna floribus*, a land pleasant with flowers. *Mons nive candĭdus*, a hill white with snow.

NOTE 6. That to instrument some refer, *conficior dolore, inedia, &c. Prosĕquor odio, amore, &c. Afficio te honore, contumelia, &c. Lacesso verbis aspĕris, &c.*

Num. 56, &c. NOTE 1. That the preposition is frequently added to names of towns (especially when the question is *quo? unde?* or *qua?*) and sometimes omitted to names of countries, provinces, &c.

¶ These rules concerning names of towns may be thus expressed:

The name of a town after { IN *or* AT / TO *or* UNTO / FROM *or* THROUGH } is put in the { Genitive or Ablative. / Accusative. / Ablative. }

i. e. When it is of the third declension, or the plural number

Digitized by Google

‡ 4. *Domus* et *rus* eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina construuntur; ut,

Manet domi, he stays at home. *Domo accersĭtus sum*, I am called from home. *Vivit rure* or *ruri*, he lives in the country. *Abiit rus*, he is gone to the country. *Redĭit rure*, he is returned from the country.

4. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as, 60

Domum revertitur, he returns home.

5. Nominibus regionum, provinciarum et aliorum locorum, non dictis, præpositio fere additur; ut,

Ubi? Natus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe, &c.
Quo? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in (*vel* ad) urbem, &c.
Unde? Rediit e Scotia, e Fifa, ex urbe, &c.
Qua? Transit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem, &c.

5. To names of countries, provinces, and other places, not mentioned, the preposition is generally added; as, 61

ANNOTATIO.

‡ Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in accusativo, interdum et in ablativo; ut,

Glasgua * distat Edinburgo triginta † millia passuum.
† Iter *v.* †itinere unius diei.

The distance of one place from another is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as, 62

Glasgow is thirty miles distant from Edinburgh.
One day's journey.

3. *Tempus.*

REG. XIV.

‡ 1. TEMPUS ponitur in ablativo, cum quæstio fit per *quando*; ut,

* Venit † hora tertia.

3. *Time.*

RULE XIV.

1. TIME is put in the ablative, when the question is made by *quando (when)*; as, 63

He came at three o' clock.

But when *at* signifies about or near a place, we make use of the preposition *ad*; as, *bellum quod ad Trojam gesserat.* Virg.

Note 2. That *humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli* are also used in the genitive, when the question is made by *ubi?* as, *procumbit humi*, he lies down on the ground. *Domi militiæque una fuimus*, we were together both at home and abroad, or, in peace and war. Ter. *Belli domique agitabatur*, was managed both in peace and war. Sal.

Note 3. That when the name of a town is put in the genitive *in urbe* is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *natus est Romæ urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili.*

Num. 63 and 64. These two rules may be thus expressed:

Digitized by Google

64 ‡ 2. Cum quæstio fit per *quamdiu*, tempus ponitur in accusativo vel ablativo, sed sæpius in accusativo; ut,

* Mansit paucos † dies.
Sex † mensibus * abfuit.

2. When the question is made by *quamdiu (how long)*, time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

He staid a few days.
He was away six months.

De Ablativo Absoluto.

REG XV.

65 ‡ SUBSTANTIVUM cum participio, quorum casus a nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in ablativo absoluto; ut,

* Sole † oriente fugiunt tenebræ.
* Opere † peracto, ludemus.

Of the Ablative Absolute.

RULE XV.

A SUBSTANTIVE with a participle, whose case depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative absolute; as,

The sun rising (or whilst the sun rises) darkness flies away.
Our work being finished (or when our work is finished) we will play.

III. CONSTRUCTIO VOCUM INDECLINABILIUM.

1. *Adverbiorum.*

66 ‡ 1. ADVERBIA junguntur verbis, participiis, nominibus, et aliis adverbiis; ut,

Bene scribit.

III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS INDECLINABLE.

1. *Of Adverbs.*

1. ADVERBS are joined to verbs, participles, nouns, and other adverbs; as,

He writes well.

---

1. Nouns that denote a precise term of time are put in the ablative.
2. Nouns that denote continuance of time are put in the accus. or abla.

Num. 65. NOTE 1. This abl. is called absolute or independent, because it is not directed or determined by any other word; for if the substantive (which is principally to be regarded) have a word before that should govern it, or a verb following after, to which it should be a nominative then the rule does not take place.

NOTE 2. That *having*, *being*, or a word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary signs of this ablative.

NOTE 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true substantive) when a participle perfect is Englished by *having*, we are carefully to advert whether it be passive or deponent. If it be passive, we are to change it into *being*, its true English. If it be deponent, there needs no change, for *having* is the proper English of it. The use of this note will appear by the following example:

Digitized by Google

Fortiter pugnans.
Servus egregie fidelis.
Satis bene.

‡ 2. Adverbia quædam temporis, loci, et quantitatis, regunt genitivum; ut,
* Pridie illius † diei.
* Ubique † gentium.
* Satis est † verborum.

‡ 3. Quædam adverbia derivata regunt casum primitivorum; ut,
† Omnium * elegantissime loquitur.
Vivere * convenienter † natūræ.

Fighting bravely.
A servant remarkably faithful.
Well enough.

2. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,
The day before that day.
Every where.
There is enough of words.

3. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,
He speaks the most elegantly of all.
To live agreeably to nature.

67

68

2. *Præpositionum.*

1. PRÆPOSITIONES *ad, apud, ante, &c.* accusativum regunt; ut,
* Ad † patrem.

2. Præpositiones *a, ab, abs, &c.* regunt ablativum; ut,
* A † patre.

3. Præpositiones *in, sub, super*, et *subter*, regunt accusativum, cum motus *ad* locum significatur; ut,
Eo * in † scholam.
* Sub † mœnia tendit. Virg.
Incidit * super † agmina. Id.
Ducit * subter † fastigia tecti. Id.

2. *Of Prepositions.*

1. THE prepositions *ad, apud, ante, &c.* govern the accusative; as,
To the father.

2. The preposit. *a, ab, abs, &c.* govern the accusative; as,
From the father.

3. The prepositions *in, sub, super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative when motion, *to* a place is signified, as,
I go into the school.
He goes under the walls.
It fell upon the troops.
He brings *(him)* under the roof of the house.

69

70

71

James, having said these things, departed, } *Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.* Dep.
James, these things being said, departed, } *Jacobus his dictis abiit.* Pass.

Having promised a great reward, } *pollicitus magnam mercedem.* Dep.
A great reward being promised, } *magnâ mercede promissâ.* Pass.

NOTE 4. That when there is no participle expressed in Latin, *existente* (being) is understood; as, *me puero*, I being a boy *Saturno rege*, Saturn being king. *Civitate nondum libera*, the state not being yet free.

Digitized by Google

72 ¶ At si motus vel quies *in* loco significetur, *in* et *sub* regunt ablativum; *super* et *subter* vel accusativum vel ablativum; ut,

Sedeo *vel* discurro * in † schola.
Recŭbo *vel* ambŭlo * sub † umbra.
Sedens * super † arma. Vir.
† Fronde * super virĭdi. Id.
Venæ * subter † cutem dispersæ. Plin.
* Subter † littore. Catul.

¶ But if motion or rest *in* a place be signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative; as,

I sit *or* run up and down in the school.
I lie *or* walk under the shadow.
Sitting above the arms.
Upon the green grass.
The veins dispersed under the skin.
Beneath the shore.

Note 5. That the participle may be resolved into *dum, cum, quando, si, postquam, &c.* (while, seeing, when, if, after,) with the verb, either in English or Latin.

¶ The prepositions, with the cases they govern, are contained in the following verses.

1. Hæ quartum adsciscunt casum sibi præposituræ.
   Ad, penes, adversum, cis, citra, adversus, *et* extra,
   Ultra, post, præter, juxta, per, pone, secundum,
   Ergo, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, propter, *et* intra,
   Queis addas contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.
2. Hæ sextum poscunt; a, cum, tenus, abs, ab, *et* absque,
   Atque palam, pro, præ, clam, de, e, ex, sine, coram.
3. Sub, super, in, subter, quartum sextumque requirunt.

Note 1. That *versus* and *usque* are put after their cases; as, *Italiam versus*, towards Italy. *Oceanum usque*, as far as the ocean. But (as we have already observed, page 80) these are properly adverbs, the preposition *ad* being understood.

Note 2. That *tenus* is also put after its case; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin.

Note 3. That *tenus* governs the genitive plural: 1. When the word wants the singular; as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as (the town) Cumæ.—2. When we speak of things of which we have naturally but two; as, *crurum tenus*, up to the legs.

Note 4. That *a* and *e* are put before consonants, *ab* and *ex* before vowels and consonants, *abs* before *t* and *q*.

Note 5. That *subter* hath very rarely the ablative, and only among poets.

Note 6. That in English *in* is commonly the sign of the ablative; *into* of the accusative.

Note 7. *In* for *erga, contra, per, supra, ad, &c.* governs the accusative; as, *amor in patriam. Quid ego in te commisi? Crescit in dies singulos. Imperium regum in proprios greges.* Hor. *Pisces in cœnam empti.* But *in* for *inter* governs the ablative; as, *in amicis habere.* Sall.

Sub for *circa* governs the accusative; as, *sub cœnam.*

Super for *ultra, præter,* and *inter,* governs the accusative; as, *super Garamantas.* Virg. *Super gratiam suam.* Sall. *In sermone super cœnam nato.* Suet. For *de,* it governs the ablative; as, *super hac re nimis.* Cic.

4. ¶ Præpositio in compositione eundem sæpe casum regit quem extra; ut,

* Adeamus † scholam.
* Exeamus † schola.

3. *Interjectionum.*

§ 1. INTERJECTIONES O, heu, et proh, regunt vocativum, interdum accusativum; ut,

* O formōse † puer!
* Heu † me misĕrum!

§ 2. Hei et væ regunt dativum; ut,

* Hei † mihi!
* Væ † vobis!

4. *Conjunctionum.*

‡ 1. CONJUNCTIONES et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, et quædam aliæ, connectunt similes casus et modos; ut,

Honōra † patrem * et † matrem.
Nec † scribit, * nec † legit.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utĭnam, et dummŏdo subjunctivo modo fere semper adhærent; ut,

Lego * ut † discam.
* Utinam † sapĕres.

4. ¶ A preposition oftentimes governs the same case in composition that it does without it; as, 73

Let us go to the school.
Let us go out of the school.

3. *Of Interjections.*

1. THE interjections O, heu, et proh, govern the vocative, and sometimes the accusative; as, 74

O fair boy!
Ah wretch that I am!

2. Hei and væ govern the dative; as, 75

Ah me!
Wo to you!

4. *Of Conjunctions.*

THE conjunctions et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, and some others, couple like cases and moods; as, 76

Honour your father and mother.
He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utĭnam, and dummŏdo are for the most part joined with the subjunctive mood; as, 77

I read that I may learn.
I wish you were wise.

Num. 73. NOTE. That this rule only takes place when the preposition may be dissolved from the verb, and put before the case by itself; as, *alloquor patrem* i. e. *loquor ad patrem.* And even then the preposition is frequently repeated; as, *exire e finibus suis.* Cæs.

Num. 76. To these add *quam, nisi, præterquam, an,* and adverbs of likeness. The reason of this construction is because the words so coupled depend all upon the same word, which is expressed to one of them, and understood to the other.

Num. 77. To these add all indefinite words, that is, interrogatives, whether nouns, pronouns, adverbs, or conjunctions, when taken in a doubt-

Digitized by Google

SYNTAXEOS SYNOPSIS; SIVE,

Genuinæ et maxime necessariæ constructionis regulæ, ad quas cæteræ omnes reducuntur.

AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS oratio constat ex nomine et verbo.

II. Omnis nominativus habet suum verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne verbum finitum habet suum nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne adjectivum habet suum substantivum expressum vel suppressum.

Sex Casuum Constructio.

I. OMNE verbum finitum expressum vel suppressum, concordat cum nominativo, expresso vel suppresso, in numero et persona; ut,

A SUMMARY OF SYNTAX; OR,

The true and most necessary rules of construction to which all the rest are reduced.

FIRST PRINCIPLES.

I. EVERY speech (or sentence) consists of a noun and a verb.

II. Every nominative hath its own verb expressed or understood.

III. Every finite verb hath its own nominative expressed or understood.

IV. Every adjective hath its own substantive expressed or understood.

The Construction of the Six Cases.

I. EVERY verb of the finite mood, expressed or understood, agrees with its nominative, expressed or understood, in number and person; as,

---

ful or indefinite sense: such as, *quis, uter, quantus, &c. Ubi, quo, unde, &c. Cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne, &c.* (See *p.* 80 and 84) They generally become indefinites, when another word comes before them in the sentence, such as, *scio, nescio, video, intelligo, dubito,* and the like; as, *ubi est frater tuus? Nescio ubi sit. An venturus est? Dubito an venturus sit.*

Ne the adverb of forbidding requires the imperative or subjunctive; as, *ne time* or *ne timeas.* See *p.* 56.

Dum, quam, quod, si, sin, ni, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, priusquam, simulac, siquidem, quandoquidem, &c. are joined sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

Puer legit.
(Homines) aiunt.
Romani (cœperunt) festinare.

II. Omnis genitivus regitur a substantivo expresso vel suppresso; ut,
Liber fratris.
Est (officium) patris.

III. Dativus acquisitionis (i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur) cuivis nomini aut verbo expresso vel suppresso jungitur; ut,
Dedi Petro.
Cui dedisti?
(Dedi) Petro.
Utilis bello.
Non est (aptus) solvendo.

IV. Omnis accusativus regitur a verbo activo, vel * præpositione expressis vel suppressis; ut,
Amo Deum et (amo) parentes.
Ad patrem.
Abiit (ad) Londinum.

¶ Aut infinitivo præponitur expressus vel suppressus; ut,
Dicit se scribere.
Licet mihi (me) esse bonum.

V. Omnis vocativus absolute ponitur, addita nonnunquam interjectione O; ut,
O Dave.
Heus Syre.

VI. Omnis ablativus regitur a * præpositione expressa vel suppressa; ut,
A puero.
Exultat (præ) gaudio.

The boy reads.
They say.
The Romans made haste.

II. Every genitive is governed by a substantive expressed or understood; as,
The book of my brother.
It is the duty of a father.

III. The dative of acquisition (i. e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken) is joined to any noun or verb expressed or understood; as,
I gave it to Peter.
To whom did you give it?
To Peter.
Profitable for war.
He is not able to pay.

IV. Every accusative is governed by an active verb, or a * preposition expressed or understood; as,
I love God, and my parents.
To the father.
He hath gone to London.

¶ Or is put before the infinitive expressed or understood; as,
He says that he is writing.
I may be good.

V. Every vocative is placed absolutely, the interjection O being added; as,
O Davus.
Come hither Syrus.

VI. Every ablative is governed by a * preposition expressed or understood; as,
From a child.
He leaps for joy.

* See *p.* 80, and Larger Syntax, *p.* 97 and 98.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE adjectivum concordat cum substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in genere, numero et casu; ut,
Bonus vir.
Triste (negotium).

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in casu; ut,
Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis infinitivus regitur a verbo vel nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,
Cupio discere.
Dignus amari.
Populus (cœpit) mirari.

I. EVERY adjective agrees with a substantive expressed or understood in gender, number and case; as,
A good man.
A sad thing.

II. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case; as,
The Lord God.

III. Every infinitive is governed by a verb or noun, expressed or understood; as,
I desire to learn.
Worthy to be loved.
The people wondered.

EXPLANATION.

ALL construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as grammarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE construction is founded upon the essential properties of words, and is almost the same in all languages. APPARENT construction entirely depends upon custom; which either for elegance or despatch, leaves out a great many words otherwise necessary to make a sentence perfectly full and grammatical. The first is comprised in these few fundamental rules, and more fully branched out in the larger syntax. The other is also interspersed through the larger syntax, but distinguished from that which is true by a (‡).

The cases mentioned in the rules of the larger syntax immediately discover the rules of this summary to which they respectively belong; those that are true without any ellipsis; those that are figurative by having their ellipsis supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the margin.

To RULE II, are reduced Num. 13, supple *negotium*. Num. 14 and 47, sup. *de causa, gratia,* or *in re, negotio*. Num. 15, sup. *e numero*. Num. 21, sup. *de negotio*. Num. 22 and 23, sup. *officium, negotium, &c.* Num. 24, sup. (1) *sat.* taken from the verb; (2) *de causa, &c.* Num. 29, sup. *memoriam, notitiam, verba, &c.* Num. 30, sup. *de crimine, pœna, &c.* Num. 35 and 36, sup. *pro re,* or *pretio æris*. Num. 40, sup. *inter negotia,* and *res* [*fert*] *se ad negotia*. Num. 42, sup. *res, negotium, &c.* Num 56, sup. *in urbe*. Num. 60, [*domi*] sup. *in ædibus*. Num. 66, these adverbs seem to be taken for substantive-nouns.

To RULE III, is reduced Num. 73, sup. *malum est;* or these interjections are used as substantives.

Digitized by Google

To RULE IV, belong Num. 18, 53, and 62, sup. *ad.* Num. 33, sup. *quod ad* Num. 41, i e. *est inter mea negotia; refert* [or *res fert*] *se ad meu negotia, &c* Num. 58, sup. *ad* or *in.* Num. 64, sup. *per.* Num. 73, sup. *sentio, lugeo, &c.*

To RULE VI, belong Num. 12, sup. *e, ex,* or *cum.* Num. 19, sup. *præ,* Num. 20, sup. *de, e, ex, cum, &c* Num. 21, sup *a, ab, &c.*

Num. 34, sup. *pro.* Num. 37, 38, sup. *a, ab, de, e, ex.* Num. 51, and 55, sup. *præ, cum, a, ab, e, ex, &c.* Num. 54, sup. *in,* or *de.* Num. 57, sup. *in.* Num. 59, sup. *a, ab, e, ex* Num. 62, sup. *in.* Num. 64, sup. *in,* or *pro.* Num. 65, sup. *sub, cum, a, ab.*

NOTE 1. That under verbs must also be comprehended participles, gerunds, and supines; because the general signification of the verb is included in them.

NOTE 2. That as a consequence of this, a learned grammarian ingeniously supposes that the dative and infinitive are always governed by a verb, and, that when they seem to be governed by a noun, the participle *existens* is understood; as, *utilis (existens) bello. Pollio præsidium (existens) reis. Dignus (existens) amari.*

NOTE 3. That the vocative is properly no part of a sentence, but the case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the vocative is put before the imperative, as frequently happens, the nominative *tu,* or *vos* is understood; and that even though these words be already expressed in the vocative; as, *tu Jacobe lege,* i. e. *O tu Jacobe, tu lege.*

NOTE 4. That the vocative is sufficient of itself, and does not necessarily require the interjection *O.* See Vossius, lib. 7, cap. 69, and Sanctius, lib. 4, de Ellipsi Verb. Audio, et Narro.

CHAP II.

OF EXPOSITION OR RESOLUTION.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a sentence, and placing all the parts of it, whether expressed or understood, in their proper order, that the true sense and meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either simple or compound.

1. A *simple* sentence is that which hath one finite verb in it.

2. A *compound* sentence is that which hath two or more such verbs in it, joined together by some couples.

These couples are of four sorts. 1. The relative *qui.* 2. Some comparative words, such as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tam, quam, &c.* 3. Indefinite words (see page 85, 86, and 113). 4. Conjunctions.

In a simple sentence there are two things to be considered. 1. Its essential. 2. Its accidental parts.

(1.) The essential parts of a sentence are a nominative and a verb.

(2.) The accidental parts are of four kinds. 1 Such as excite attention, as the vocative and exciting particles; as, *O, en, ecce, heus, &c.* 2. Such as serve to introduce a sentence, or to shew its dependence upon what was said before; as, *jam, hactenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea, &c.* 3. Such as limit the general and indefinite signification either of the nominative or verb, and these are substantive-nouns. 4. Such as qualify and

Digitized by Google

explain them, viz. adjectives, adverbs, and prepositions, with their cases. Sometimes a part of a compound sentence supplies the place of those two last kinds of words.

II. The order of words in a sentence is either natural or artificial.

1. Natural order is when the words of a sentence naturally follow one another in the same order with the conceptions of our minds.

Artificial order is when words are so arranged as to render them most agreeable to the ear, but so as the sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A sentence may be resolved from the artificial into the natural order by the following rules.

1. Take the vocative, exciting, and introductory words where they are found.

2. The nominative.

3. Words limiting or explaining it, i. e. words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by another successively (till you come to the verb) where they are found.

4. The verb.

5. Words limiting or explaining it, &c. where they are found, to the end of the sentence.

6. Supply every where the words that are understood.

7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

EXAMPLE. Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere. Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then my (son) Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence is resolved into these five simple sentences.

[1.] Igitur mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale, [2.] et (tu) persuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum (filium) mihi; [3.] sed (tu persuade tibi te) fore cariorem (filium mihi in) multo (negotio), [4.] si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis, [5.] et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis.

NOTE 1. That interrogative words stand always first in a sentence, unless a preposition come before them.

NOTE 2. That negative words stand immediately before the verb.

NOTE 3. That relatives are placed before the word by which they are governed, unless it be a preposition.

NOTE 4. That the subjunctive mood is used in compound sentences.

NOTE 5. That the parts of a compound sentence are separated from one another by these marks called interpunctions. 1. Those that are smaller, named clauses, by this mark [,], called a *comma*. 2. Those that are greater, named members, by this mark [:], called *colon*, or this [;], called a *semicolon*. 3. When a sentence is thrown in, that has little or no connexion with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a *parenthesis*, marked thus ().

But when the sentence, whether simple or compound, is fully ended, if it be a plain affirmation or negation, it is closed with this mark [.] called a *point*. If a question be asked, with this mark [?] called a *point of interrogation*. If wonder or some other sudden passion be signified, with this mark [!], called a *point of admiration*.

Digitized by Google

PART IV.

OF PROSODY.

PROSODY teaches the quantity of syllables.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of syllables, and the measures of verse is called PROSODY.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēnděrĕ*.

Some syllables are COMMON.

A common syllable is that which, in verse, is sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *penultima*, or by contraction, the *penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by AUTHORITY, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* and *lēgi* seems to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlĕgo*, *perlēgi*.

The rules of quantity are either general or special. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, mĕus, alĭus; so nĭhil, *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, crĕate, bĕhave.

EXCEP. 1. *I* is long in fīo, fīebam, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, fĭeri, fĭerim.

EXCEP. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, speciēi. So is the first syllable in āer, dīus, ēheu, and the penultima in aulāi, terrāi, &c. in Pompēi, Cāi, and such like words; but we sometimes find Pompei in two syllables.

Digitized by Google

EXCEP. 3. The first syllable in ohe and Diana is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, illius, unius, &c. to be read long in prose. Alīus in the genitive is always long; alterĭus, short.

In Greek words, a vowel before an other is sometimes short; as, Danăe, idĕa, Simŏis, &c. sometimes long; as, Lycāon, Cytherēa, Medēa, Darīus, Amphīon, Ixīon, elegīa, Antīochīa, Alexandrīa, &c. But chorea, platea, canopeum, and Malea, a proper name, are common.

In English it is also often lengthened; as in scīence, idēa.

2. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (by position, as it is called); as, ārma, fāllo, āxis, gāza, mājor; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, bijŭgus, quadrijŭgus, &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date vela, scandite muros. Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the first syllable in agris, and the middle in pharetra, podagra; but in prose we usually pronounce it short.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom; but *a* in *matris* is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris*, *ambulācrum*, is always long: because they are derived from *salus*, *salūtis*, *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte*, *abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

3. A contracted syllable is long; as, cōgo, for coăgo; alīus, for aliius; tibīcen, for tibiicen; īt for iit; sōdes, for si audes; nōlo, for non volo; bīgæ, for bijŭgæ, &c.

4. A dipthong is always long; as, aurum, Cæsar, Eubœa, &c. Only *præ* in composition, before a vowel, is short; as, præire.

We often find two vowels in the same syllable short; as, linquĭmus, sanguinis, &c. but these commonly are not reckoned dipthongs, perhaps improperly.

In English we pronounce several of the dipthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no dipthong.

Digitized by Google

SPECIAL RULES.

I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of Two Syllables.

5. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, Vēni, vīdi, vīci.

Except these six, bĭbi, scĭdi, from scindo; fĭdi, from findo; tŭli, dĕdi, stĕti.

6. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, Vīsum, cāsum, mōtum.

Except sătum, from sĕro; cĭtum, from cieo; lĭtum, from lĭno; sĭtum, from sĭno; stătum from sisto; ĭtum, from eo; dă̆tum, from do; rŭtum, from the compounds of ruo; qŭĭtum, from queo; rătus, from reor.

Preterites Doubled.

7. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as, cĕcĭdi, tĕtĭgi, pĕpŭli, pĕpĕri, dĭdĭci, tŭtŭdi; except cĕcīdi, from cædo; pĕpēdi, from pēdo; and when two consonants intervene; as, fĕfĕlli, tĕtēndi, &c.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, rex, rēgis. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and goes through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, iter, itĭnĕris.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, gener, geněri, geněrōrum.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless when one vowel comes before another; as, fructus, fructŭi; res, rĕi; which fall under Rule 1.

Second Declension.

8. Nouns of the second declension which increase, shorten the penultima; as, gener, geněri; vir, vĭri; satur, satŭri; except Iber, Ibēri; and its compound, Celtiber, Celtibēri.

Digitized by Google

Third Declension.

9. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long, *e i* and *u* short; as, pietātis, honōris; muliĕris, lapĭdis, murmŭris.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A

A noun in *a* shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, dogma, -ătis; poema -ătis.

O

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *enis* and *onis*; as, cardo, -ĭnis; virgo, -ĭnis; Anio, -ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, Macedo, -ŏnis; Saxo, -ŏnis: Some are long; as, Suessiōnes, Vettōnes. Brittones is common.

I C D

I shortens *itis*; as, Hydromeli, -ĭtis. *Ec* lengthens *ecis*; as, Halec, -ēcis.

A noun in *d* shortens the crement; as, David, -ĭdis.

L

Masculines in *al* shorten *alis*; as, Sal, sălis; Hannibal, -ălis; but neuters lengthen it; as, animal, -ālis.

Sōlis, from sol, is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, Michael, -ēlis. Other nouns in *l* shorten the crement; as, vigil, -ĭlis; consul, -ŭlis.

N

Nouns in *on* vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, Helicon, -ōnis; Chiron, -ōnis. Some shorten it; as, Memnon, -ŏnis; Actæon, -ŏnis.

En shortens *inis*; as, flumen, -ĭnis; tibicen, -ĭnis. Other nouns in *n* lengthen the penult. *An*, *anis*; as, Titan, -ānis: *En*, *enis*; as, Syren, -ēnis: *In*, *inis*; as, delphin, -īnis: *Yn*, *ynis*; as, Phorcyn, -ȳnis.

R

1. Neuters in *ar* lengthen *aris*; as, calcar, -āris. Except the following; bacchar, -ăris; jubar, -ăris; nectar, -ăris: Also the adjective par, păris, and its compounds, impar, -ăris; dispar, -ăris &c.

Digitized by Google

2. The following nouns in *r* lengthen the genitive; Nar, Nāris, the name of a river; fur, fūris; ver, vēris; Also Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris; Ser, Sēris; Iber, -ēris, are proper names.

3. Greek nouns in *ter* lengthen *teris;* as, crater, -ēris; character, -ēris. Except æther, -ĕris.

4. *Or* lengthens *oris;* as, amor, -ōris. Except neuter nouns; as, marmor, -ŏris; æquor, -ŏris: Greek nouns in *tor;* as, Hector, -ŏris; Rhetor, -ŏris: Also arbor, -ŏris; and memor, -ŏris.

5. Other nouns in *r* shorten the genitive; *ar, aris,* masculine; as, Cæsar, ăris; Hamilcar, -ăris; lar, lăris.

Er, eris, of any gender; as, aer, aĕris; mulier, -ĕris; cadaver, -ĕris; iter, (anciently itiner) itinĕris; verbĕris, from the obsolete verber. *Ur, uris;* as, vultur, -ŭris; murmur, -ŭris. *Yr, yris;* as, martyr, -yris.

AS

1. Nouns in *as* which have *atis* lengthen the crement; as, pietas, -ātis; Mæcenas, -ātis. Except anas, -ătis.

2. Other nouns in *as* shorten the crement; as, Greek nouns in *adis, atis,* and *anis;* thus, Pallas, -ădis; artocreas, -eătis; Melas, -ănis, the name of a river. So vas, vădis; mas, măris: But vas, vāsis, is long.

ES

Es shortens the crement; as, miles, -ĭtis; Ceres, -ĕris; pes, pĕdis.

Except locuples, -ētis; quies, -ētis; mansues, -ētis: hæres, -ēdis; merces, -ēdis.

IS

Nouns in *is* shorten the crement; as, lapis, -ĭdis; sanguis, -ĭnis; Phyllis, -ĭdis.

Except glis, glīris; and Latin nouns which have *itis;* as, lis, lītis; dis, dītis; Quiris, -ītis; Samnis, -ītis: But charis, a Greek noun, has charĭtis.

The following also lengthen the crement; Crenis, -īdis; Psophis, -īdis; Nesis, -īdis, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is,* which have also *in;* as, Salamis (or Salamin), -īnis.

OS

Nouns in *os* lengthen the crement; as, nepos, -ōtis; flos, flōris. Except bos, bŏvis; compos, -ŏtis; impos, -ŏtis.

US

Us shortens the crement; as, tempus, -ŏris; tripus, -ŏdis.

Except nouns which have *udis, uris,* and *utis;* as, incus, -ūdis; jus, jūris; salus, -ūtis. But Ligus has Ligŭris; the obsolete pe-

Digitized by Google

cus, pecŭdis; and intercus, -ŭtis. The neuter of the comparative has *oris*; as, melius, -ōris.

YS

Ys shortens *ydis* or *ydos*; as, chlamys, -ydis or ydos; and lengthens *ynis*; as, Trachys, -ȳnis.

BS PS MS

Nouns in *s* with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, cœlebs, -ĭbis; inops, -ŏpis; hiems, -ĕmis.

Except cyclops, ōpis; seps, sēpis; gryps, grȳphis; Cecrops, -ōpis; plebs, plēbis; hydrops, -ōpis.

T

T shortens the crement; as, caput, -ĭtis.

X

1. Nouns in *x*, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; conjux, -ŭgis; remex, -ĭgis; Allobrox, -ŏgis; Phryx, Phrygis. But lex, lēgis; and rex, rēgis, are long; and likewise frūgis.

2. *Ex* shortens *icis*; as, vertex, -ĭcis; except vibex, -īcis.

3. Other nouns in *x* lengthen the crement; as, pax, pācis; radix, -īcis; vox, vōcis; lux, lūcis; Pollux, -ūcis, &c.

Except făcis, nĕcis, vĭcis, prĕcis, calĭcis, pĭcis, fornĭcis, nĭvis, Cappadŏcis, præcŏcis, dŭcis, nŭcis, crŭcis, trŭcis, onȳcis, Erȳcis, and many others whose quantity can be only ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, Syphax, -ācis or -ăcis; Sandyx, -ĭcis or īcis.

Increase of the Plural Number.

10. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *a e* and *o* long; but shorten *i* and *u*; as, musārum, rērum, dominōrum; regĭbus, portŭbus; except bobus or bubus, contracted for bŏvĭbus.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, amas, amāmus, when the second syllable *ma* is the increase or crement; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, amas, amābāmĭni; in which case it is said to have a first, second, or third increase.

11. In the increase of verbs, *a e* and *o* are long, *i* and *u* short; docēre, amātōte; legĭmus, sŭmus, volŭmus.

Digitized by Google

Except do and its compounds of the first conjugation, which have the first increase short; as, dăre, dămus, dăbāmus, circundăre, venundăbo, &c.

The poets sometimes shorten dĕdĕrunt and stĕtĕrunt, and lengthen *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as, Transierītis aquas. Ov. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words, which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by authority; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

In the first and middle syllables of words, however, the most frequent mistakes in quantity are committed. They therefore merit particular attention.

Remarks on the Quantity of some other First and Middle Syllables of Words.

1. Patronymics in *ides* and *ades* usually shorten the penult; as, Priamĭdes, Atlantiădes, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, Pelīdes, Tydīdes, &c.

2. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, *itis*, *ois*, *otis*, *ine*, and *one*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chrysēis, Ænēis, Memphītis, Latōis, Icariōtis, Nerīne, Arisiōne. Except Thebais, Phocais, and Nereis, which are common.

3. Adjectives in *acus*, *icus*, *idus*, and *imus*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, Ægyptiăcus, academĭcus, lepĭdus, legitĭmus; also superlatives; as, fortissĭmus, &c. Except opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, medīcus, postīcus, fīdus, infīdus, (but perfĭdus of per and fĭdes, is short) bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus; and two superlatives, īmus, prīmus.

4. Adjectives in *alis*, *anus*, *arus*, *ivus*, *orus*, *osus*, lengthen the penult; as, dotālis, urbānus, avārus, æstīvus, decōrus, arenōsus. Except barbărus, opipărus.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ilis* shorten the penult; as, agĭlis, facĭlis, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, anīlis, civīlis, herīlis, &c. To these add, exīlis, subtīlis; and names of months, Aprīlis, quinctīlis, sextīlis. Except humĭlis, parĭlis, and also simĭlis. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, versatĭlis, volatĭlis, umbratĭlis, &c.

6. Adjectives in *inus* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, amaracĭnus, crocĭnus, cedrĭnus, fagĭnus, oleagĭnus; adamantĭnus, cristallĭnus, crastĭnus, pristĭnus, &c.

Digitized by Google

Other adjectives in *inus* are long; as, agīnus, bīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vespertīnus, &c.

7. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, and *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, always shorten the penult; as, urceŏlus, siliŏla, musæŏlum, lectŭlus, ratiuncŭla, corcŭlum, &c.

8. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; as, oppidātim, virītim, tribūtim. Except affătim, perpĕtim, and stătim.

9. Desideratives in *urio* shorten the antepenultima, which, in the second and third person, is the penult; as, esŭrio, esŭris, esŭrit; but other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris, &c.

II. Final syllables.

A

12. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, musă, templă, tydeă, lampadă; except the ablative of the first declension; as, musâ, Ænēâ; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, O Ænēâ, O Pallâ.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, amā, frustrā, prætereā, ergā, intrā; except ităquiă, ejă, posteă, pută *(adverb)*, and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions contră, ultră, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, trigintă, &c.

E

13. *E* final is short; as, natĕ, sedĭtĕ, patrĕ, currĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.

EXCEP. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, mē, tē, sē, except these enclitic conjunctions, quĕ, vĕ, rĕ; and these syllabical adjections, ptĕ, cĕ, tĕ; as, suoptĕ, hujuscĕ, tutĕ.

EXCEP. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, Calliopē, Anchisē, fidē. So *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds quarē, hodiē, pridiē, postridiē, quotidiē: Also Greek nouns which want the singular, Cetē, Melē, Tempē; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, docē, manē; but cave, vale, and vide, are sometimes short.

EXCEP. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, placidē, pulchrē, valdē, contracted for valide; to these add, fermē, ferē, and ohē; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, doctissimē, fortissimē; But benĕ and malĕ are short.

I

14. *I* final is long; as, dominī, patrī, doceri.

EXCEP. 1. Greek verbs are short; as, Alexĭ, Amarillĭ.

EXCEP. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension, which is common; as, Palladĭ, Minoidĭ. Mihi, tibi, sibi, are also com-

Digitized by Google

mon; So likewise are ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi, and cui, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. Sicubĭ and necubĭ are always short.

O

15. *O* final is common; as, virgo, amo, quando.

EXCEP. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, ō, dō, stō, prō; and the dative and ablative singular of the second declension; as, librō, dominō; also Greek nouns; as, Didō, and Athō the genitive of Athos; and adverbs derived from nouns; as, certō, falsō, paulō. To these add quō, eō, and their compounds, quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō; likewise illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō.

EXCEP. 2. The following words are short; egŏ, sciŏ, cedŏ (a defective verb), homŏ, citŏ, illicŏ, immŏ, duŏ, ambŏ, modŏ with its compounds, quomodŏ, dummodŏ, postmodŏ; but some of these are also found long.

U Y

16. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; vultū, molў.

B D L M R T

17. *B*, *D*, *L*, *M*, *R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, make the foregoing vowel short; as, ăb, apŭd, semĕl, precŏr, capŭt.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, militŭm octo, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, milit' octo; except in compound words; as, circŭmago, circŭmeo.

The following words are long; sāl, sōl, nīl, pār, fār, lār, nār, cūr, fūr; also nouns which have *eris* in the genitive; cratēr, vēr, Ibēr; likewise, aēr, æthēr; to which add Hebrew names, as, Jōb, Daniēl, Davīd.

C N

18. *C* and *N* in the end of a word are long; as, āc, sīc, nōn.

The following words are short; nĕc, doneĕc, forsităn, ĭn, forsăn, tamĕn, ăn, videĕn; likewise nouns in *en*, which have *inis* in the genitive; as, carmĕn, crimĕn; together with several Greek nouns; as, Iliŏn, Pylŏn, Alexĭn. The pronoun hic and the verb fac are common.

AS ES OS

19. *AS*, *ES*, and *OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as, māS, quiēS, bonōS.

The following words are short; anăs, ĕs from sum, penĕs, ŏs having ossis in the genitive, compŏs, and impŏs; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, Arcă, Arcadăs, hercăs, Phrygĕs, Arcadŏs, Tenedŏs, Melŏs, &c. and Latin nouns in *es* having the penult of the genitive increasing, short; as, alĕs, hebĕs, obsĕs. But Cerēs, pariēs, abiēs, and pēs with its compounds are long.

IS US YS

20. *IS*, *US*, and *YS*, in the end of a word, are short; as, turrĭs, legĭs, legĭmŭs, annŭs, Capўs.

EXCEP. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnîs for omnes, fructûs, manûs; also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, portûs.

Digitized by Google

EXCEP. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis*, *inis*, or *entis*; as, līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simoīs: to these add the adverbs gratīs, and forīs; the noun glīs, and vīs, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, audīs, abīs, possīs; *ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

EXCEP. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, grūs, sūs; also nouns which in the genitive have *uris*, *udis*, *utis*, *untis*, *odis*; as, tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amathūs, tripūs. To these add the genitive of the Greek nouns of the third declension; as, Cliūs, Sapphūs, Mantūs; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, Panthūs.

EXCEP. 4. Tethys is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, Phorcȳs, Trachȳs.

The last syllable of every verse is common; or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

DERIVATIVES.

21. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus *from*	ămo.		Exŭlo *from*	exul	-ŭlis.
Auctiōnor	auctio	-ōnis.	Păvidus	păveo.	
Auctōro	auctor	-ōris.	Quirīto	quiris	-ītis.
Audītor	audītum.		Radīcor	radix	-īcis.
Auspĭcor	auspex	-ĭcis.	Sospĭto	sospes	-ĭtis.
Caupōnor	caupo	-ōnis.	Nātura	nātus.	
Colōro	color	-ōris.	Māterus	māter.	
Cornīcor	cornix	-īcis.	Lĕgebam, &c.	lĕgo.	
Custōdio	custos	-ōdis.	Lēgeram, &c.	lēgi.	
Decōrus	decor	-ōris.	Decŏro	decus	-ŏris.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Long from short.*

Dēni *from*	dĕcem.	Suspīcio *from*	suspĭcor.	Mōbilis *from*	mŏveo.
Fōmes	fŏveo.	Sēdes	sĕdeo.	Hūmor	hŭmus.
Hūmanus	hŏmo.	Sēcius	sĕcus.	Jūmentum	jŭvo, &c.
Rēgula	rĕgo.	Pēnuria	pĕnus.		

2. *Short from long.*

Nŏta *from*	nōtus.	Lŭcerna *from*	lūceo.
Vădum	vādo.	Dux, dŭcis	dūco.
Fĭdes	fīdo.	Stăbilis	stābam.
Sŏpor	sōpio.	Dĭtio	dis, dītis.

COMPOUNDS.

22. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as, dēdūco of *dē* and *dūco*. So prōfĕro, antĕfĕro, consōlor, dēnōto, dēpĕcŭlor, dēprāvo, despēro, despūmo, desquāmo, ēnōdo, ērŭdio,

Digitized by Google

exŭlo, incĕpio, inhŭmo, investīgo, prægrăvo, prænăto, rĕlĕgo, ăppăro, appăreo, concăvus, prægrăvis, dēsŏlo, suffŏco, diffĭdit from diffindo, and diffīdit from diffīdo, indīco and indĭco, permănet from permăneo, and permānet from permăno, effŏdit in the present, and effōdit in the perfect; so exĕdit and exēdit; devĕnit and devēnit; devĕnīmus and devēnīmus; effŭgit and effūgit, &c.

The change of a vowel or dipthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, incīdo from *in* and *cædo*; incĭdo from *in* and *cædo*; suffŏco from *sub* and *faux, faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, ădmitto, pĕrcello, dēosculor, prŏhibeo.

EXCEP. 1. Agnītum, cognītum, dejūro, pejūro, innūba, pronūba, maledīcus, veredīcus, nihīlum, semisŏpītus; from nōtus, jūro, nūbo, dīco, nihīl and sŏpio; ambītus, a participle from ambio, is long; but the substantives ambĭtus and ambĭtio are short; Connubium has the second syllable common.

EXCEP. 2. The preposition *pro* is short in the following words; prŏfundus, prŏfugio, prŏfugus, prŏnepos, prŏneptis, prŏfestus, prŏfāri, prŏfiteor, prŏfānus, prŏfecto, prŏcella, prŏtervus, and prŏpāgo, a lineage; *pro* in prōpāgo, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; propago (to propagate), propino, profundo, propello, propulso, procūro, and Proserpĭna.

EXCEP. 3. The inseparable prepositions *se* and *di* are long; as, sēparo, dīvello; except dĭrimo, dĭsertus. *Re* is short; as, rĕmitto, rĕfĕro; except the impersonal verb, rēfert.

EXCEP. 4. *E, i*, and *o*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, nĕfas, nĕque, patĕfacio, &c., omnĭpotens, agrĭcŏla, signĭfĭco, &c., duŏdĕcim, hŏdie, sacrŏsanctus, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long, when it is varied by cases; as, quīdam, quīvis, tantīdem, eīdem, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, ludīmagister, lucrīfacio, sīquis, &c. Idem in the masculine is long, in the neuter short; also ubīque, ibīdem. But in ubivis and ubicunque the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of meaning, it is called *emphasis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute, grave, circumflex*.

1. The acute or sharp accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [´]; as, prŏfero, prŏfer.

2. The grave or base accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone, and is thus marked [`]; as, doctè. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other

Digitized by Google

3. The circumflex accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the last syllable; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written it has this mark, made up of the two former [^]; as, amâre.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, aliquò, continuò, doctè, unà, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelled in the same way. So poētâ, gloriâ, in the ablative; fructûs, tumultûs, in the genitive; nostrûm, vestrûm, the genitive of nos and vos; ergô, on account of; occĭdit, he slew; Pompilĭ, for Pompilii; amâris, for amaveris, &c.

VERSE.

A verse is a certain number of short and long syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line. The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it hath its just number of syllables, are called *feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. *Feet of Two Syllables.*

Spondeus	consists of two long;	as, *ōmnēs.*
Pyrrhichius	two short;	as, *dĕŭs.*
Iambus	a short and a long;	as, *ămāns.*
Trochæus	a long and a short;	as, *sērvŭs.*

2. *Feet of Three Syllables.*

Dactylus	consists of a long and two short;	as, *scrībĕrĕ.*
Anapæstus	two short and a long;	as, *pĕtĕrĕ.*
Amphimăcer	a long, a short, and a long;	as, *chārĭtās.*
Tribrachys	three short;	as, *dŏmĭnŭs.*

(The Following are not much used.)

Molossus,	dēlēctānt.	*Bacchius,*	dŏlōrēs.
Amphibrachys,	hŏnōrĕ.	*Antibacchius,*	pēllūntŭr.

Digitized by Google

3. *Feet of Four Syllables.*

Antispastus,	Alĕxāndĕr.	*Pæon primus,*	tēmpŏrĭbŭs.
Ionicus minor,	prŏpĕrābānt.	*Pæon secundus,*	pŏtēntĭă.
Ionicus major,	cālcārĭbŭs.	*Pæon tertius,*	ănĭmālĭs.
Proceleusmaticus,	hŏmĭnĭbŭs.	*Pæon quartus,*	cĕlĕrĭtās.
Dispondeus,	ōrātōrēs.	*Epitritus primus,*	vŏlūptātēs.
Dijumbus,	ămænĭtās.	*Epitritus secundus,*	pænĭtēntēs.
Choriambus,	pōntĭfĭcēs.	*Epitritus tertius,*	dĭscōrdĭās.
Ditrochæus,	cāntĭlēnă.	*Epitritus quartus,*	fōrtūnātŭs.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or Heroic verse, consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee: all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees:

Lūdĕrĕ	quæ vĕl-	lēm călă-	mō pēr-	mīsĭt ă-	grēsti. Virg.
Infān-	dūm, Rē-	gīnă jŭ-	bēs rĕnŏ-	vārĕ dŏ-	lōrem. Id.

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic;* as,

Cāră Dĕ- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs, māg- | nūm Jŏvĭs | ĭncrē- | mēntum. Virg.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m* with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnĭă | Mērcŭrĭ- | ō sĭmĭ- | līs vō- | cēmquĕ cŏ- | lōrēmque
Et flavos crines.—— Virg.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these, the two first are either dactyles or spondees, the third always a spondee, and the fourth and fifth an anapæstus; as,

Nātū-	ræ sĕquĭ-	tūr sē-	mĭnă quĭs-	quĕ sŭæ. Propert.
Cārmĭnĭ-	bŭs vī-	vĕs tēm-	pŭs ĭn ōm-	nĕ mĕis. Ovid.

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves: the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees and a cæsura; the latter always of two dactyles and another cæsura; thus,

Nātū	ræ sĕquĭ	tūr	sēmĭnă	quĭsquĕ sŭ-	æ.
Cārmĭnĭ-	bŭs vī-	vĕs	tēmpŭs ĭn	ōmnĕ mĕ-	is.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadean verse consists of four feet; to wit, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a Pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gĭbus. Hor.

Digitized by Google

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ătă- | vīs | ēdĭtĕ | rēgĭbus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet; a spondee, a choriambus, and a Pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tĭbĭ crē- | dĭtum,— Hor.

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Nāvīs | quæ tĭbĭ | crēdĭtum,—

5. SAPPHIC.

The Sapphic verse has five feet; viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intĕ- | gēr vī- | tæ, scĕlĕ- | rīsquĕ | pūrus. Hor.

6. ADONIAN.

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and a spondee; as,

Jūpĭtĕr | ūrget. Hor.

7. PHARECRATIAN.

The Pharecratian verse consists of three feet; a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquŏră | vēntis. Hor.

8. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucean verse consists of five feet; viz. a spondee, dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmām | nē mĕtŭ- | ās dĭ- | ēm, nĕc | ōptes. Mart.

9. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The Greater Alcaic (called likewise *Dactylic*) consists of four feet; a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles: as,

Vīrtūs | rĕpūl- | sæ | nēscĭă | sōrdĭdæ. Hor.

10. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian Iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsura; as,

Nēc sū | mĭt, aūt | pōnīt | sĕcū- | res. Hor.

11. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet; namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbĭtrĭ- | ō pŏpŭ | lārĭs | auræ. Hor.

Digitized by Google

Of the above kinds of verse, the two first take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the Dactylic, Trochaic, Anapæstic, and Iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

12. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name, *Dimĕter;* the other consists of six feet, and is called, *Trimĕter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in Iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the Dimeter, *quaternarius;* and the Trimeter, *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely Iambic, i. e. admitted of no other feet but the iambus; as,

Dimeter, Inār- | sĭt æs- | tŭō- | sĭus. Hor.
Trimeter, Sŭīs | ĕt īp- | să Rō- | mă vī- | rĭbūs | rŭit. Id.

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places, that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribachys in the even places, i. e. in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cānĭdĭ- | ă trāc- | tāvīt | dăpes. Hor.
Vĭdē- | rĕ prŏpĕ- | rāntēs | dŏmum. Id.
Trimeter, Quōquō | scĕlēs- | tī rŭĭ- | tĭs aut | cūr dēx- | tĕris. Hor.
Păvĭdūm- | quĕ lĕpŏ- | r' aut ād- | vĕnām | lăquĕō grŭem. Id.
Alĭtĭ- | bŭs āt- | quĕ cānĭ- | bŭs hŏmĭ- | cīd' Hēc- | tŏrem.

In comic writers we sometimes find an Iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

A verse which hath just the number of feet requisite, is called *Versus Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse; if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus;* if there be a syllable too much, it is called *Hypercatalecticus* or *Hypermeter*.

Note. It is not of great importance, whether these names, and several others of the same nature which follow, be remembered by the learner or not. They are here made use of and explained, that they may not appear strange, when they occur in other books.

COMBINATION OF VERSES.

The different kinds of verses are variously combined in poems.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, *Monocolon;* that which has two kinds, *Dicolon;* and that which has three kinds of verse, *Tricolon*.

That which consists of two kinds of verse, and always after two lines returns to the first, is called *Dicolon Distrophon;* as when a single pentameter is alternately placed after a hexameter, which is named *Elegiac* verse, because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis, indignos, Elegiă, solve capillos,
Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

Digitized by Google

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristrophon;* when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetrastrophon;* as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. Hor.

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristrophon;* but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetrastrophon;* as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic; which is named the *Carmen Horatianum,* or Horatian verse, because frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ:
Cætusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe, Stanza,* or *Staff.*

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning;* as,

Spond. Dact. Spond. Spond. Dact. Spond.
Fēlīx | qui pŏtŭ- | īt rē- | rūm cōg- | nōscĕrĕ | causās, &c.
S. D. S. S. D. S.
Illūm | nōn pŏpŭ- | lī fās- | cēs nōn | pūrpŭră | rēgūm.
D. S. D. S. D. S.
Flĕxĭt ĕt | ĭnflĭ- | dōs ăgĭ- | tāns dīs- | cōrdĭă | frātrēs. Virg.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning.* The chief of these are the *Synalæpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis, Systŏle,* and *Diastŏle.*

1. *Synalæpha* is the cutting off of a vowel or dipthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. Virg.

To be scanned thus,

Cōntĭcŭ- | ēr' ōm- | nēs ĭn- | tēntī- | qu' ōră tĕ- | nēbant.

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, ô, heu, ah, proh, væ, vah, hei; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. Virg.

2. *Ecthlipsis* is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! Pers.

Thus,

O | cū- | rās hŏmĭ- | n'! ō quăn- | t' ēst ĭn | rēbŭs ĭn- | ānē!

Digitized by Google

3. *Synæresis* is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis;* as, Phæthon for Phaethon. So ëi in deinde, Pompei; öi in proinde; ëâ in aureâ; thus,

Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. Virg.

4. *Diæresis* divides one syllable into two; as, Troïæ for Trojæ; Persëus for Perseus; milüus for milvus.

5. *Systole* is when a long syllable is made short; as, the penult in tulĕrunt; thus,

Matri longa decem tulĕrunt fastidia menses. Virg.

6. *Diastole* is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amōr* in the following verse:

Confidant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant.

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction,* as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or a syllable is added to the beginning of a word it is called *Prothesis;* as, gnavus for navus; tetuli for tuli. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called *Epenthesis;* as, relligio for religio; induperator for imperator. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called *Paragōge;* as, dicier for dici.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word it is called *Aphæresis;* as, natus for gnatus; tenderant for tetenderant. If from the middle of a word, it is called *Syncŏpe;* as, dixti for dixisti; deûm for deorum. If from the end, *Apocŏpe;* as, videsn' for videsne; Antonî for Antonii.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called *Metathĕsis;* as, pistris for pristis; Lybia for Libya. When one letter is put for another, it is called *Antithĕsis;* as, faciundum for faciendum; olli for illi; voltis for vultis.

But what particularly deserves attention in scanning verse, especially hexameter, is the *Cæsūra.*

Cæsura is when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot: as,

S. *D.* *S.*
At rē- | gīnă gră- | vī jām- | dūdūm, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemiměris.* When on the fifth half foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemiměris.* When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemiměris.* And when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennečmiměris.*

All these different species of *Cæsura* sometimes occur in one verse; as,

Illĕ lă-tūs nĭvĕ-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hўă-cīntho. Virg.

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause;* as,

Tityre, dum rede-*O*, brevis est via, pasce capellas. Virg.

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long, as the last syllable of *fultus* in the fore-going example.

Digitized by Google

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite, will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ mænĭă tērrŭĭt ĭmpĭgĕr Hānnĭbăl ārmis. Ennius.

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore *we* are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

DICTA SAPIENTUM E GRÆCIS.

D. ERASMO ROTEROD. INTERPRETE.

Aurea dicta, puer, quæ sunt hic mente reconde;
Hinc poteris magna commoditate frui.

DICTA PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

OMNIBUS placeto.
Bona res quies.
Periculosa temeritas.
Semper voluptates sunt mortales:
Honores autem immortales.
Amicis adversâ fortunâ utentibus idem esto.
Lucrum turpe, res pessima.
Quicquid promiseris facito.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.
Veritati adhæreto.
Age quæ justa sunt.
Violentiam oderis.
Principibus cede.
Opportunitatem expectato.
Mortalia cogita.
Ne prior injuriam facias.
Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Probrum fugito.
Responde in tempore.
Ea facito quorum te non possit pœnitere.
Ne cui invideas.
Oculis moderare.
Quod justum est imitare.
Bene meritos honora.
Spem fove.
Calumniam oderis.
Affabilis esto.

Digitized by Google

Voluptati tempera.
A jurejurando abstine.
Pietatem sectare.
Laudato honesta.
A vitiis abstine.
Beneficium repende.
Supplicibus misericors esto.
Liberos instrue.
Sapientum utere consuetudine.
Litem oderis.
Bonos in pretio habeto.
Arcanum cela.
Cede magnis.
Ne efferaris gloriâ.
Largire cum utilitate.
Amicis utere.
Cum errâris, muta consilium.
Concordiam sectare.
Diuturnam amicitiam custodi.
Magistratus metue.
Omnibus teipsum præbe.
Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
Ne tempori credideris.
Teipsum ne negligas.
Seniorem reverere.
Mortem oppete pro patria.
Ne quavis de re doleas.
Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Sperato tanquam mortalis:
Parcito tanquam immortalis.
Mortuum ne irrideto.
Dilige amicos.
Consule inculpatè.

DICTA BIANTIS PRIENENSIS.

IN speculo teipsum contemplare; et si formosus apparebis, age quæ deceant formam; sin deformis, quod in facie minus est vel deest, id morum pensato pulchritudine.
Audito multa;
Loquĕre parca.
De numine ne male loquaris.
Quid sit autem ausculta.
Prius autem intellige, et deinde ad opus accede.
Ne ob divitias laudaris virum indignum.
Persuasione cape, non vi.
Compara in adolescentia quidem modestiam, in senectute verò prudentiam.

DICTA PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne dixeris; frustratus enim rideberis.
Depositum redde.
Desidiosus ne esto.
A familiaribus in minutis rebus læsus, feras.
Amico ne maledixeris.
Inimicum ne putes amicum.
Uxori dominare [*Christiane*].
Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem a liberis expecta.
Inter amicos ne fueris judex.
Ne contende cum parentibus, etiamsi justa dixeris.
Ne geras imperium priusquam parere didiceris.
Infortunatum ne irriseris.
Audito libenter.
Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.
Ne festines loqui.
Nosce teipsum.
Legibus pare.
Voluptatatem coërce.
Ne quid nimis.
Inimicitiam solve.
Ante omnia venerare Numen.
Parentes reverere.
Quæ fieri non possunt, cave concupiscas.
Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus; ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris, dominos tibi pares, non affines.

DICTA CLEOBULI LINDII.

NE sis unquam elatus.
Domûs curam age.
Libros evolve.
Lapis auri index, aurum hominum.
Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris.
Voto nil pretiosius.

Digitized by Google

Bonis benefacito.
Liberos tibi charissimos erudi.
A maledicentia temperato.
Res amici diligas, ac perinde serves ut tuas.
Inferiorem ne rejicias.
Ne teipsum præcipites in discrimen.
Citius ad infortunatos amicos, quam ad fortunatos proficiscere.
Justè judicato.
Ne cui miniteris; est enim muliebre.
Suspicionem abjicito.
Parentes patientiâ vince.
Beneficii accepti memento.
Aliena ne concupiscas.
Mendax calumnia vitam corrumpit.
Mendaces odit quisque prudens et sapiens.

DICTA CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

NOSCE teipsum.
Ne cui invideas mortalia.
Temperantiam exerce.
Turpia fuge.
Tempori parce.
Justè rem para.
Sapientiâ utere.
Multitudini place.
Oderis calumnias.
Ne quid suspiceris.
Moribus probatis esto.
Ne fueris onerosus.

DICTA SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

DEUM cole.
Parentes reverere.
Amicis succurre.
Veritatem sustineto.
Ne jurato.
Legibus pareto.
Cogita quod justum est.
Iracundiæ moderare.
Virtutem laudato.
Malos odio prosequitor.

DICTA THALETIS MILESII.

PRINCIPEM honora.
Amicos probato.
Similis tui sis.
Nemini promittito.
Quod adest boni consulito.
A vitiis abstineto.
Gloriam sectare.
Vitæ curam age.
Pacem dilige.
Laudatus esto apud omnes.
Susurronem ex ædibus ejice.

DIONYSII CATONIS
DISTICHA DE MORIBUS, AD FILIUM.

Recognita de novo ad Metaphrasin Jos. Scaligeri, ejusdemque D. Erasmi, P. Scriverii, & M. Zuer. Boxhornii Notas et Castigationes, a T. R.

IN USUM SCHOLARUM.

Illis quæ cecinit Themis aut Thymbræus Apollo,
Non canit hicce catus deteriora Cato.

PRÆFATIO CUM BREVISSIMIS PRÆCEPTIS.

QUUM animadverterem quam plurimos homines graviter errare in via morum, succurrendum et consulendum eorum opinioni existimavi, maxi-

Digitized by Google

me ut' gloriose viverent, et honorem contingerent. Nunc te, fili charissime, docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas: Legere enim, et non intelligere, negligere est.

ITAQUE Deo supplica.
Parentes ama.
Cognatos cole.
Magistrum metue.
Datum serva.
Foro te para.
Cum bonis ambula.
Ad consilium ne accesseris, antequam voceris.
Mundus esto.
Saluta libenter.
Majori cede.
Minori parce.
Rem tuam custodi.
Verecundiam serva.
Diligentiam adhibe.
Libros lege.
Quæ legeris memento.
Familiam cura.
Blandus esto.
Bonis benefacito.
Maledicus ne esto.
Existimationem retine.
Æquum judica.
Parentes patientiâ vince.
Beneficii accepti memor esto.
Ad prætorium stato.
Consultus esto.
Utere virtute.
Irasci ab re noli.
Neminem irriseris.
Miserum ne irriseris.
Mutuum dato.
Cui des videto.
In judicium adesto.
Conjugem ama.
Liberos erudi.
Patere legem quam ipse tuleris.
Pauca in convivio loquere.
Convivare raro.
Quod satis est dormi.
Jusjurandum serva.
Vino te tempera.
Pugna pro patria.
Nil temerè credideris.
Tu te consule.
Meretricem fuge.
Literas disce.
Nihil mentiri debes.
Iracundiam tempera.
Trocho lude.
Aleas fuge.
Nihil ex arbitrio virium feceris.
Minorem te ne contempseris.
Aliena concupiscere noli.
Illud stude quod justum est.
Amorem libenter ferto.

DISTICHORUM DE MORIBUS.

LIBER I.

Dei cultus præcipuus.

SI Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,
Hic tibi præcipuè sit purâ mente colendus.

Somnolentia vitanda.

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto;
Nam diuturna quies vitiis alimenta ministrat.

Cohibenda lingua.

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam;
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

Digitized by Google

Sibi ipsi conveniendum.

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse;
Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.

Nemo temere culpandus.

Si vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,
Cùm culpas alios; nemo sine crimine vivit.

Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque;
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

Mores pro tempore mutandi.

Et levis* et constans, ut res expostulat, esto;
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.

* al. *constans aut levis*, repugnante metro.

Uxori non semper assentiendum.

Nil temere uxori de servis crede querenti;
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjux diligit, odit.

Instandum correctione animi.

Cùmque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,
Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.

Stulti verbis non vincuntur.

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis;
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.

Amicus sibi quisque primus.

Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus;
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur.

Rumores spargere vetitum.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi;
Nam nulli tacuisse nocet, nocet esse locutum.

Fides aliena non promittenda.

Rem tibi promissam certò promittere noli;
Rara fides ideò est, quia multi multa loquuntur.

Judex quisque sit sui.

Cum te aliquis laudat, judex tuus esse memento
Plus aliis de te, quàm tu tibi credere noli.

Beneficiorum ratio.

Officium alterius multis narrare memento;
Atque aliis cùm tu benefeceris, ipse sileto.

Senio bene gesta referenda.

Multorum cum facta senex et dicta recenses
Fac tibi sucurrent, juvenis quæ feceris ipse.

Suspicionis labes.

Ne cures si quis tacito sermone loquatur;
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

Digitized by Google

In prosperis de adversis cogitandum.

Cùm fueris felix, quæ sunt adversa caveto;
Non eodem cursu respondent ultima primis.

Mors alterius non speranda.

Cùm dubia et fragilis sit nobis vita tributa,
In morte alterius spem tu tibi ponere noli.

Animus in dono æstimandus.

Exiguum munus cum dat tibi pauper amicus,
Accipito placidè, plenè et laudare memento.

Paupertas toleranda.

Infantem nudum cùm te natura creârit,
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

Mors non formidanda.

Ne timeas illam, quæ vitæ est ultima finis;
Qui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipsum.

Amicorum ingratitudo fugienda.

Si tibi pro meritis nemo respondet amicus,
Incusare Deum noli, sed te ipse coerce.

Frugalitas.

Ne tibi quid desit quæsitis utere parcè;
Utque quod est serves, semper tibi deesse putato.

Promissio iterata molesta.

Quod præstare potes, ne bis promiseris ulli;
Ne sis ventosus, dum vis bonus esse videri.

Ars arte deludenda.

Qui simulat verbis, nec corde est fidus amicus;
Tu quoque fac simile; sic ars deluditur arte.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare;
Fistula dulce canit, volucrem dum decipit anceps.

Liberi artibus instruendi.

Cùm tibi sint nati, nec opes; tunc artibus illos
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

Res quomodo æstimandæ.

Quod vile est, carum; quod carum est, vile putato,
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habeberis ulli.

Culpata non facienda.

Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse;
Turpe est doctori cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

Concedenda petenda.

Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum;
Nam stultum est petere id quod possit jure negari.

Digitized by Google

Nota ignotis non commutanda.

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis ;
Cognita judicio constant, incognita casu.

Dies quisque supremus putandus.

Cùm dubia incertis versetur vita periclis,
Pro lucro tibi pone diem quocunque* laboras. * al. *quicunque.*

Obsecundandum amicis.

Vincere cum possis, interdum cede sodali ;
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

Amicitiæ mutua officia.

Ne dubites, cum magna petas, impendere parva ;
His etenim rebus conjungit gratia charos.

Amicitia rixas odit.

Litem inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est.
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

Castigatio sine ira.

Servorum ob culpam cum te dolor urget in iram,
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis tu parcere possis.

Patientiâ vincendum.

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo :
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

Quæsita sunt servanda.

Conserva potius, quæ sunt jam parta labore ;
Cum labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

Consulendum sibi in primis.

Dapsilis interdum notis, et charus amicis ;
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

LIBER II.

Præfatio.

TELLURIS si fortè velis cognoscere cultus,
Virgilium legito. Quòd si magè nôsse laboras
Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,
Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.
Si Romana cupis et civica noscere bella.
Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.
Si quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendo,
Nasonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est
Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,
Per quæ semotum vitiis traducitur ævum.
Ergo ades, et quæ sit sapientia disce legendo.

Digitized by Google

De omnibus bene merendum.

Si potes, ignotis etiam prodesse memento ;
Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.

Arcana Dei non scrutanda.

Mitte arcana Dei, cœlumque inquirere quid sit :
Cùm sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

Mortis timor gaudia vitæ pellit.

Linque metum lethi, nam stultum est tempore in omni
(Dum mortem metuis) amittere gaudia vitæ.

Iracundia cavenda.

Iratus de re incertâ contendere noli :
Impedit ira animum ne possit cernere verum.

Expendendum ubi opus est.

Fac sumptum properè, cùm res desiderat ipsa :
Dandum etenim est aliquid, cum tempus postulat aut res.

Fortuna modica tutior.

Quod nimium est fugito, parvo gaudere memento :
Tuta magè est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

Occulta vitia reticenda.

Quod pudeat socios prudens celare memento :
Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

Occulta tandem revelantur.

Nolo putes pravos homines peccata lucrari :
Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore parent*.

* i. e. *apparent*, vulgo *patent*, contra metri legem.

Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli :
Consilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

Cedendum potiori ad tempus.

Cui sciêris non esse parem te, tempore cede :
Victorem a victo superari sæpe videmus.

Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis :
Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

Fortuna non quærenda sorte.

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte :
Quid statuat de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

Luxus odium generat.

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento :
Quæ si non lædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

Animus non deponendus ob iniquum judicium.

Esto animo forti, cùm sis damnatus iniquè.
Nemo diu gaudet, qui judice vincit iniquo.

Digitized by Google

Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre :
Post inimicitias iram meminisse malorum est.

Teipsum neque lauda nec culpa.

Nec te collaudes nec te culpaveris ipse ;
Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexit inanis.

Parsimonia.

Utere quæsitis parcè cum sumptus abundat ;
Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo.

Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.

Insipiens esto, cùm tempus postulat aut res ;
Stultitiam simulare loco prudentia summa est.

Neque prodigus neque avarus esto.

Luxuriam fugito, simul et vitare memento
Crimen avaritiæ ; nam sunt contraria famæ.

Loquaci parum credendum.

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper ;
Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

Ebrius vinum non accuset.

Quæ potu* peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli ; * al. *potus.*
Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

Amicis consilia credenda.

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali ;
Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

Successus malorum non te offendat.

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè ;
Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

Futuros casus prævidendos.

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos.
Nam levius lædit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

Animus in adversis spe fovendus.

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli ;
Spem retine ; spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.

Opportunitas cùm contingit tenenda.

Rem tibi quam noscis aptam dimittere noli ;
Fronte capillatâ, post est occasio calva.

Futura ex præteritis colligenda.

Quod sequitur specta, quodque imminet antè, videto ;
Illum imitare deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

Vitæ ratio habenda.

Fortius ut valeas, interdum parcior esto ;
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura saluti.

Digitized by Google

Multitudini cedendum.

Judicium populi nunquam contempseris unus ;
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

Valetudo curanda.

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum est, cura salutis ;
Tempora ne culpes, cum sis tibi causa doloris.

Somnia non observanda.

Somnia ne cures ; nam mens humana quod optat,
Dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum.

LIBER III.

Præfatio.

Hoc quicunque voles carmen cognoscere, lector,
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratissima vitæ,
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem spreveris illud,
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

Dandam esse operam literis.

INSTRUE præceptis animum, nec discere cesses ;—
Nam sine doctrinâ vita est quasi mortis imago.

Moribus captanda fama.

Fortunæ donis semper parere memento ;
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsis.

Recte agendo aliorum linguas ne timeas.

Cùm rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum ;
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

Amici crimen celandum.

Productus testis, salvo tamen antè pudore,
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Sermones blandos blæsosque cavere memento ;
Simplicitas veri sana* est, fraus ficta loquendi.

* Scal. *fama*, i. e. indicium, al. *norma*.

Ignava vita fugienda.

Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur ;
Nam cùm animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

Animus fessus relaxandus.

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis ;
Ut possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

Malo animo neminem reprehendas.

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpseris unquam ;
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

Digitized by Google

Hæreditas augenda.

Quod tibi sors dederit tabulis suprema notato;
Augendo serva; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

Senectus sit munifica.

Cùm tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectæ,
Munificus facito vivas, non parcus amicis.

Verba attendenda, non os loquentis.

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,
Nullius sensum, si prodest, tempseris unquam.

Præsenti utendum fortunâ.

Rebus et in censu si non est quod fuit antè,
Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

Uxor spe dotis non quærenda.

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis;
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

Alieno sapere exemplo.

Multorum disce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,
Quæ fugias; vita est nobis aliena magistra.

Nihil ultra vires.

Quod potes, id tentes; operis ne pondere pressus
Succumbat labor, et frustra tentata relinquas.

Consentire videtur qui tacet.

Quod nôsti haud rectè factum, nolito silere;
Ne videare malos imitari velle tacendo.

Rigor favore temperandus.

Judicis auxilium sub iniquâ lege rogato;
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

Feras quæ tuâ culpâ pateris.

Quod meritò pateris, patienter ferre memento;
Cùmque reus tibi sis, ipsum te judice damna.

Multa legenda, sed cum judicio.

Multa legas facito; perlectis perlege* multa; * al. *neglige.*
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda poetæ.

Modestè in convivio loquendum.

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus;
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.

Conjugis iratæ nolito verba timere;
Nam lacrymis struit insidias, dum fœmina plorat.

Quæsitis utendum, non abutendum.

Utere quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti;
Qui sua consumunt, cùm deest, aliena sequuntur.

Digitized by Google

Mors non formidanda.

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam ;
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.

Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento ;
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

Pietas erga parentes.

Æquâ diligito charos pietate parentes ;
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

LIBER IV.

Præfatio.

Securam quicunque cupis traducere vitam,
Nec vitiis hærere animum, quæ moribus obsunt ;
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento ;
Invenies aliquid quo* te nitare magistro. * al. *quo vitæ utare.* al. *tu te utare.*

Divitiarum contemptus.

DESPICE divitias, si vis animo esse beatus ;
Quas qui suspiciunt, mendicant semper avari.

Vivere secundum naturam optimum.

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

Res ratione regenda.

Cùm sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,
Noli fortunam, quæ nulla† est, dicere cæcam. † al. *non est.*

Amor pecuniæ ad usum.

Dilige denarium‡, sed parcè dilige formam, ‡ al. *denari.*
Quam nemo sanctus nec honestus captat habere§. § al. *ab ære.*

In valetudine ne opibus parcas.

Quum fueris locuples, corpus curare memento ;
Æger dives habet nummos, sed|| non habet ipsum. || al. *se.*

Castigatio paterna ferenda.

Verbera cùm tuleris discens aliquando magistri,
Fer patris imperium, cùm verbis exit in iram.

Certa et utilia agenda.

Res age quæ prosunt ; rursus vitare memento
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

Libenter donandum.

Quod donare potes, gratis¶ concede roganti ; ¶ al. *ne vende.*
Nam rectè fecisse bonis in parte lucrosum** est. ** al. *lucrorum.*

Digitized by Google

Suspicio statim expendenda.

Quod tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit;
Namque solent primò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere.

Venus abstinentiâ cohibenda.

Cùm te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,
Indulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est.

Homo malus, fera pessima.

Cùm tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

Sapientia fortitudini præferenda.

Cùm tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires.
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

Amicus cordis medicus.

Auxilium a notis petito, si fortè laboras;
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

Sacrificium, spiritus dejectus.

Cùm sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victima pro te?
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

Amicus ex moribus deligendus.

Cùm tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

Avaritia vitanda.

Utere quæsitis opibus; fuge nomen avari;
Quid tibi divitiæ prosunt, si pauper abundas?

Voluptas inimica famæ.

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis honestam;
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

Senem etiam delirum ne irriseris.

Cùm sapias animo noli irridere senectam;
Nam quicunque senet, sensus puerilis in illo est.

Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.

Disce aliquid; nam cùm subito fortuna recessit,
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

Mores ex verbis cogniti.

Perspicito tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur;
Sermo etenim mores et celat et indicat idem.

Ars usu juvanda.

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem;
Ut cura ingenium, sic et manus adjuvat usum.

Vitæ contemptus.

Multum ne cures venturi tempora fati;
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

Digitized by Google

Discendum et docendum.

Disce, sed a doctis; indoctos ipse doceto:
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

Bibendi ratio.

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus:
Morbi causa mali nimia est quandoque* voluptas. * al. *quæcunque.*

Ne damnes quod probaveris.

Laudâris qnodcunque palàm, quodcunque probâris,
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

Circumspectus utrâque fortunâ esto.

Tranquillis rebus quæ sunt adversa timeto†; † al. *caveto.*
Rursus in adversis meliùs sperare memento.

Studio crescit sapientia.

Discere ne cesses: curâ sapientia crescit:
Rara datur longo prudentia temporis usu.

Parcè laudandum.

Parcè laudato: nam quem tu sæpe probâris,
Una dies, qualis fuit, monstrabit amicus.

Discere non pudeat.

Ne pudeat, quæ nesciêris, te velle doceri:
Scire aliquid laus est, turpe‡ est nil discere velle. ‡ al. *culpa.*

Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.

Cum Venere et Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas:
Quod blandum est animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

Tristibus et tacitis non fidendum.

Demissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento:
Quâ flumen placidum est, forsan latet altiùs unda.

Sors sorti conferenda.

Cùm tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum,
Alterius specta quo§ sis discrimine pejor. § al. *qui sis.*

Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.

Quod potes id tenta; nam littus carpere remis
Tutius est multò, quàm velis‖ tendere in altum. ‖ al. *velum.*

Cum justo inique non contendendum.

Coptra hominem justum pravè contendere noli:
Semper enim Deus injustas ulsciscitur iras.

Fortuna utraque æque ferenda.

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo:
Sed gaude potius, tibi¶ si contingat habere. ¶ al. *si nil.*

Ab amico quid ferendum.

Est jactura gravis, quæ sunt, amittere damnis:
Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

Digitized by Google

Tempori non confidendum.

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ:
Quocunque ingrederis sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

Deus quibus placandus.

Thure* Deum placa: vitulum sine crescat aratro; * al. *ture.*
Ne credas placare Deum, dum cæde litatur.

A potentioribus læsus dissimula.

Cede locum læsus, fortunæ cede potenti:
Lædere qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit.

Castiga teipsum.

Cùm quid peccâris, castiga te ipse subinde:
Vulnera dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.

Damnâris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum:
Mutavit mores; sed pignora prima memento.

Beneficiis collatis attende.

Gratior officiis, quò sis magé charior, esto:
Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur officiperda†. † al. *officiperdæ.*

Suspicionem tolle.

Suspectus cave sis, ne miser omnibus horis:
Nam timidis et suspectis aptissima mors est.

Humanitas erga servos.

Cùm fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,
Ut servos dicas, homines tamen esse memento.

Occasionem rei commodæ ne prætermittas.

Quamprimùm rapienda tibi est occasio prima,
Ne rursus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

Non lætandum repentino obitu.

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere malorum:
Felices obeunt quorum sine crimine vita est.

Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.

Cùm tibi sit conjux, neꝉ res et fama laboret, ‡ al. *nec.*
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

Junge studium.

Cùm tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa:
Fac discas multa, et vites nil§ velle doceri. § al. *non.*

Brevitas memoriæ amica.

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus?
Hos brevitas sensûs fecit conjungere binos.

Digitized by Google

GULIELMI LILII MONITA PÆDAGOGICA:

SIVE,

CARMEN DE MORIBUS AD SUOS DISCIPULOS.

QUI mihi discipulus, puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.
Mane citus lectum fuge, mollem discute somnum;
Templa petas supplex et venerare Deum.
Attamen in primis facies sit lota manusque;
Sint nitidæ vestes, comptaque cæsaries.
Desidiam fugiens, cùm te schola nostra vocârit,
Adsis; nulla pigræ sit tibi causa moræ.
Me Præceptorem cùm videris ore saluta,
Et condiscipulos ordine quosque tuos.
Tu quoque fac sedeas, ubi te sedisse jubemus:
Inque loco, nisi sis jussus abire, mane.
Ac magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,
Hoc magis is clarâ sede locandus erit.
Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,
Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.
Si quid dictabo, scribes: at singula rectè:
Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.
Sed tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis
Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.
Sæpe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvas:
Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.
Qui dubitat, qui sæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit:
Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.
Disce, puer, quæso: noli dediscere quicquam:
Ne mens te insimulet conscia desidiæ.
Sisque animo attentus: quid enim docuisse juvabit,
Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas?
Nil tam difficile est quod non solertia vincat:
Invigila, et parta est gloriâ militiæ.
Nam veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,
Ni sit continuo victa labore manûs:
Sic puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum
Tempus et amittit, spem simul ingenii.
Est etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.
Incumbens studio, submissâ voce loqueris:
Nobis dum reddis, voce canorus eris.
Et quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem:
Singula et abjecto verbula redde libro.

Digitized by Google

Nec verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum:
Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.
Si quicquam rogito, sic respondere studebis,
Ut laudem dictis et mereare decus.
Non linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tardâ:
Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.
Et quoties loqueris, memor esto loquare Latinè:
Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.
Præterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,
Instrue: et ignaros ad mea vota trahe.
Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctissimus esset,
Ipse brevi reliquis doctior esse queat.
Sed tu nec stolidos imitabere Grammaticastros,
Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii:
Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore est,
Quem non auctorem barbara turba probet.
Grammaticas rectè si vis cognoscere leges,
Discere si cupias cultiùs ore loqui:
Addiscas veterum clarissima scripta virorum,
Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.
Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipse Terentius optat,
Nunc simul amplecti te Ciceronis opus:
Quos qui non didicit, nil præter somnia vidit,
Certat et in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.
Sunt quos delectat (studio virtutis honestæ
Posthabito) nugis tempora conterere:
Sunt quibus est cordi, manibus, pedibusve sodales,
Aut alio quovis solicitare modo:
Est alius, qui se dum clarum sanguine jactat,
Insulso reliquis improbat ore genus.
Te tam prava sequi nolim vestigia morum:
Ne tandem factis præmia digna feres.
Nil dabis aut vendes, nil permutabis emesve,
Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.
Insuper et nummos, irritamenta malorum,
Mitte aliis: puerum nil nisi pura decent.
Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,
Sint procul a vobis: Martis et arma procul.
Nil penitus dices, quod turpe, aut non sit honestum:
Est vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.
Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,
Jurare aut magni nomina sacra Dei.
Denique servabis res omnes atque libellos,
Et tecum, quoties isque redisque, feres.
e vel causas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,
us et nobis displicuisse potes.

Digitized by Google

REGIMEN MENSÆ HONORABILE.

Nemo cibum capiat, donec benedictio fiat.

Dum manducatis,
- Vultus hilares habea-
- Sal cultello capia-
- Quod edendum sit, ne peta-
- Non nisi depositum capia-
- Rixas et murmura fugia-
- Manibus erectis sedea-
- Mappam mundam tenea-
- Ne scalpatis cavea-
- Aliis partem tribua-
- Morsus non rejicia-
- Modicum sed crebrò biba-
- Grates Deo per Christum refera- tis.

Privetur mensâ, qui sfreverit hæc documenta.

RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

In nomine Dei Patris, Filii, et Spiritûs Sancti. Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA, Matth. vi.

PATER noster, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur nomen tuum. 2. Veniat regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos a malo; quia tuum est regnum, et potentia, et gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

CREDO in Deum Patrem Omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli et terræ. 2. Et in Iesum Christum, filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum, 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria virgine. 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus et sepultus, descendit ad infernа. 5. Tertio die resurrexit a mortuis. 6. Ascendit ad cœlos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris Omipotentis. 7. Inde venturus est judicatum vivos et mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Oredo sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem. 10. Remissionem peccatorum. 11. Carnis resurrectionem. 12. Et vitam æternam.

DECALOGUS (SIVE LEX DEI).

Locutus est Deus omnia verba hæc. Exod. xx.

EGO sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, e domo servitutis.

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.

II. Ne sculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cœlo, aut infra in terrâ, aut in aquis sub terrâ; neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes, vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertiâ et quartâ progenie eorum qui oderunt me, et misericordiâ utens in milesimam eorum qui diligunt me, et observant præcepta mea.

Digitized by Google

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temere. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, et facies omne opus tuum. At septimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, et mare, et quæcunque in iis sunt; requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, et sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum et matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

SUMMA LEGIS, Matth. xxii. 34.

PHARISÆI, quum audivissent quòd Jesus silentium imposuisset Sadducæis, congregati sunt pariter. 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, et dicens, 36. "Præceptor, quod præceptum maximum est in lege."

37. JESUS autem dixit illi, "Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, et ex totâ animâ tuâ, et ex omni cogitatione tuâ. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum et primum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi; nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut teipsum. 40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex et Prophetæ."

Quot sunt Christianæ Ecclesiæ Sacramenta?
Duo.
Quæ sunt illa?
Baptismus et sacra Cœna Domini.

INSTITUTIO BAPTISMI.

Cujus hæc sunt verba. Matth. xxviii. 19 Mark xvi. 15.

ITE et docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit et baptizatus fuerit, servabitur; Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis; et ecce ego vobiscum sum omnibus diebus usque ad consummationem seculi.

Hæc promissio repetitur, cùm Scriptura Baptismum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, et ablutionem peccatorum. Tit. iii. 5. Acts xxii. 16.

INSTITUTIO CŒNÆ DOMINI.

Cujus hæc sunt verba. 1 Cor. xi. 23.

EGO enim accepi a Domino nostro id quod tradidi vobis; Quod Dominus noster Jesus Christus, eâ nocte quâ proditus est, accepit panem; et gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit; "Accipite, manducate, hoc est corpus

Digitized by Google

meum, quod pro vobis frangitur; Hoc facite ad memoriam mei." Itidem et poculum, postquam cœnâsset, dicendo: "Hoc poculum est novum illud fœdus per meum sanguinem; Hoc facite, quotiescunque biberitis, in mei recordationem." Quotiescunque enim ederitis panem hunc, et poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annunciabitis, usque quò venerit. Itaque quisquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus est corporis et sanguinis Domini. Probet autem quisque seipsum, et ita de de pane illo edat, et de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit et bibit indignè, damnationem sibi ipsi edit et bibit, quia non decernit corpus Domini.

Hæc promissio a Paulo exprimitur, cùm inquit,

POCULUM gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio est sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes sumus.

Two Prayers to be taught unto Children at School, with a Form of blessing God before and after Meat.

MORNING PRAYER.

O GOD! I praise thee for the creation of the world, and for the redemption of mankind by thy son Jesus Christ, and for thy many favours bestowed on me: Thou didst safely take me from the womb, and hast ever since cared for me; Thou hast afforded me the means of grace, and called me to the hope of glory.

But, O most merciful Father! I, a poor and miserable sinner, conceived in sin, and brought forth in iniquity, have gone astray from thee; I have not cared to know thee, and to do thy will, but have done my own will, and followed my own foolish and sinful inclinations, and do therefore deserve thy wrath and curse. O Lord have mercy upon me, turn me unto thee, and grant me repentance and forgiveness of all my sins, for Jesus Christ's sake. Let it from henceforth become my chief care to please thee, and to seek thy kingdom and righteousness. Work in me a true faith, a lively hope, and a fervent charity; make me humble, meek, patient, sober, and just, and loving to all men, submissive and obedient to them that are over me, and well content and thankful in every condition of life. Grant that I may daily grow in the knowledge, love, and fear of thee. Create in me a clean heart, O God, and renew a right spirit within me.

I thank thee, O Lord! for thy care of me this night; watch over me this day; keep me mindful that I am always in thy sight; and grant that through the whole course of my life I may be holy and harmless in all manner of conversation; that when this short and frail life is at an end, I may be made partaker of everlasting life, through the merits of Jesus Christ, our Lord, in whose name and words I pray, *Our Father, which art in heaven, &c.*

EVENING PRAYER.

MOST gracious God! what shall I render unto thee for thy many and great benefits bestowed on me? Though I have been an undutiful and disobedient servant unto thee, thou hast continued thy care and kindness for

Digitized by Google

me ever since I was born, and hast preserved me to this day: Let me never forget thy goodness, but grant that I may thereby be led to repentance and amendment of life. Preserve me from every thing that is displeasing to thee. O Lord! keep me from cursing, swearing, and lying,—from pride, stubbornness and idleness. Work in me an utter dislike of all uncleanness, of gluttony and drunkenness, of all malice and envy, of strife and contention, of deceit and covetousness. Give me grace to deny all ungodliness and worldly lusts, and to live godly, righteously, and soberly in this present world. Cause me to understand and to consider the laws and life of thy son Jesus Christ, that I may do his will, and follow his steps. Let not the cares of this life, nor the love of riches, nor evil company, nor the corrupt customs of the world withdraw me from the obedience of thy laws; but strengthen and establish me by thy holy spirit, that I may live and die thy faithful servant.

O Lord! send thy gospel through the world; pour out plenteously the spirit of truth, holiness, and peace on all people; bless the church and nation; guide our rulers and magistrates; sanctify and assist the ministers of the gospel; visit all that are in trouble and sanctify their afflictions to them; be gracious to all my kindred, friends, and neighbours; and bless and forgive all mine enemies.

Lord! watch over me this night, and keep me ever mindful that I am shortly to die and come to judgment, that I may without delay turn to thee, and pass the time of my sojourning here in thy fear.—Good Lord! hear me, and grant these my desires, and what else thou knowest to be needful for me, for the sake of Jesus Christ our Lord; in whose name and words I pray, *Our Father, &c.*

GRACE BEFORE MEAT.

O LORD, be merciful unto us, and pardon our sins; sanctify these thy good benefits, that we, by the sober and thankful use of them, may be enabled for thy service, through Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour.—*Amen.*

GRACE AFTER MEAT.

We thank and praise thee, O Lord, the giver of all good! who hast at this time fed our bodies; stir up in us a greater care for our souls; and grant that our short lives, which are so carefully sustained by thy bounty, may be spent in doing thy will. Lead us safely through this vain and sinful world, in which we are pilgrims and strangers, and at length bring us to everlasting rest through Jesus Christ.—*Amen.*

END.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

THE ESSEX INSTITUTE
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

. . .

GIFT OF

GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google